



Python and Machine Learning for Weather, Climate and Environment

Tutorial and Guide

Roland Potthast

with contributions by Stefanie Hollborn, Jan Keller, Thomas Deppisch,
Mareike Burba, Matthias Mages, Sarah Heibutzki, Marek Jacob, Florian
Prill, Tobias Göcke

April 16, 2025

Table of Contents

Introduction	i
I Programming and working with Data in the Time of AI	i
II General Coding Rules and Strategy	iv
III 6 Days Python and AI	xi
<hr/>	
Day 1: Python as Workhorse	1
1 Python Basics	1
1.1 Install, Virtual Environment, Pip und Import	1
1.2 Managing Dependencies with requirements.txt	3
1.3 Introduction to NumPy	7
1.4 Generating Plots based on Matplotlib	10
1.5 Functions	13
1.6 Python Essentials	14
2 Jupyter Notebooks, APIs and Servers	23
2.1 Introduction to Jupyter Notebooks	23
2.2 Introduction to APIs: A Key Principle in Code Development	30
2.3 Making API Requests with requests	32
2.4 Fortran Integration using ctypes as API	40
3 Eccodes for Grib, Opendata, NetCDF, Visualization	42
3.1 Downloading ICON Model GRIB Files from DWD Open Data Server	43
3.2 The Grib Library eccodes	45
3.3 Accessing SYNOP Observation Files from NetCDF	55
3.4 Analysing AIREP Feedback Files in NetCDF Format	58
<hr/>	
Day 2: AI/ML Basic Introduction	69
4 Basics of Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning (AI/ML)	70
4.1 AI and ML - Basic Ideas	70
4.2 Torch Tensors - Basics and Their Role in Minimization	73
4.3 PyTorch Fundamentals - Model, Loss, and Optimizer	74
4.4 Simple Neural Network Training Example	79
4.5 Gradient Field and Decision Boundary	84
5 Neural Network Architectures	89
5.1 Feed Forward Networks	89

5.2 Graph Neural Networks	94
5.3 Applying Convolutional Neural Networks for Function Classification	99
5.4 LSTM-Based Anomaly Detection in Sensor Data	104
6 Large Language Models	113
6.1 LLM Network as Sequence-to-Sequence Machines via Transformer Models	113
6.2 Implementing and Training a Simple Transformer-Based LLM	117
6.3 Install Your Own LLM, Chat with it and Develop Applications	122
Day 3: LLM RAG, Python Packages, Multi-Modality	133
7 LLM with Retrieval-Augmented Generation (RAG)	134
7.1 Preparing Documents	135
7.2 Generating Embeddings for Documents	137
7.3 Using an LLM Locally or with OpenAI for Response Generation	140
7.4 Saving and Reloading the Vector Database, Collecting Search Originals, Chunking long Documents	145
7.5 End-to-End AI-Powered Answer Pipeline	149
8 Python Packages	154
8.1 Review of the Python Standard Library	154
8.2 Xarray - Multi-dimensional labeled Data	157
8.3 Pandas - Data Frames and Analysis Package	158
8.4 SciPy Scientific Computing, Optimization and Statistics	158
8.5 Scikit-Learn - Machine Learning, Classification, Regression	159
9 Multimodal LLMs	163
9.1 Fundamentals of Multimodal Large Language Models	163
9.2 Radar Data Access and AI Interpretation	167
9.3 Cloud Top Height as a Multimodal AI Application	171
Day 4: GPUs, AI Agents, Services and Impact	175
10 Further ML Architectures and Topics	176
10.1 Diffusion Networks	176
10.2 Using GPUs for Training	176
10.3 Dynamic Graphs in Neural Networks for Observation Processing	179
11 Agents and Coding with LLM	180
11.1 Introduction to Automated Coding with LLM	180
11.2 Survey of Agent Frameworks	181
11.3 Example 1: Using LangChain for Code Execution	181
11.4 Example 2: Using Auto-GPT to Automate Tasks	182
11.5 Generated Code: Fetching and Plotting a 2m Temperature Field	183
11.6 Building a Vector Database as Package	184
12 LLMs for Geosciences, Weather, and Climate	185
12.1 The LLM AI Interface and Framework DAWID	185
12.2 AI-Assisted Feature Detection in Weather and Climate Data	185

12.3 Automated Weather Report Generation and Interpretation	185
12.4 Communicating Weather and Climate Information with LLMs	185
12.5 Impact-Based Decision Support Tools for Weather and Climate	186
Day 5: LLM Maturity and Operations	186
13 MLFlow - Managing and Monitoring Training	187
13.1 Setting up MLFlow	187
13.2 Monitoring Training	187
13.3 Comparing Experiments	187
13.4 Managing Parameters	187
14 MLOps - Operations	188
14.1 Introduction to MLOps: Principles and Workflow	188
14.2 Model Deployment and Monitoring	188
14.3 CI/CD for Machine Learning: Automation and Reproducibility	188
14.4 Scalability and Infrastructure: Kubernetes, Cloud, and On-Premise Solutions	188
15 Fine-Tuning LLMs	189
15.1 Introduction to Finetuning Large Language Models	189
15.2 Dataset Preparation and Preprocessing	189
15.3 Techniques and Strategies for Finetuning	189
15.4 Evaluation and Deployment of Finetuned Models	189
Day 6: AI Model and AI Data Assimilation	189
16 Anemol – AI-Based Weather Modeling	190
16.1 Introduction to Anemol	190
16.2 Core Architecture and AI Components	190
16.3 Training Anemol with Historical Weather Data	190
17 Model Emulation and AICON	191
17.1 The AICON Training Dataset	191
17.2 The AICON Setup, Grid and Graph Network	191
17.3 How AICON Hierarchical Training works	191
17.4 AICON Runs Verification	191
18 AI Data Assimilation	192
18.1 Introduction to AI-VAR	192
18.2 Observation Processing	192
18.3 Training and Applications	192
Appendix	192
19 History of Large Language Models	193
19.1 The History of Large Language Models	193
19.2 The Georgetown-IBM Experiment of 1954	195
19.3 ELIZA — The First Chatbot in History	196

19.4 Probabilistic Models in Language Processing in the 1990s	198
19.5 The Rise of Neural Networks from 2000	199
19.6 The Vector Representation of Language and Its Significance	201
19.7 The Transformer Revolution (2010–2020): The Rise of Modern Language Models . .	202
19.8 The GPT Revolution from 2020: Artificial Intelligence at the Next Level	203
19.9 AI Agents: Autonomous Systems of the Future	205

Introduction

I Programming and working with Data in the Time of AI

I.1 Integrating AI into Forecasting and Modeling: A Strategic Transformation

Artificial Intelligence (AI) is not just an enhancement to traditional forecasting and modeling—it is increasingly becoming a *core component* of next-generation weather and climate prediction systems. Some traditional methods will be replaced by AI-driven approaches, while others will be hybridized with AI for better efficiency and accuracy. AI enables *learning directly from observations*, either by improving data assimilation techniques or solving the data to forecasting task by end-to-end learning.

This section presents a structured transformation strategy for adopting AI-based forecasting, model development, and service automation.

Building AI Expertise with Python and AI Workflows

To effectively integrate AI, we must ensure our teams are skilled in both AI methods and operational workflows. Our approach includes:

- Establishing structured learning paths for key AI techniques relevant to *weather and climate modeling*.
- Using Python libraries such as *numpy*, *eccodes*, *netcdf*, and *xarray* for handling large meteorological datasets.
- Training teams in machine learning frameworks such as *TensorFlow*, *PyTorch*, and *Hugging Face Transformers*.
- Setting up *end-to-end AI workflows* in Jupyter-based environments, covering data ingestion, training, validation, and inference.
- Encouraging collaboration between *meteorologists, model developers, and AI experts* to foster cross-disciplinary innovation.

Replacing and Hybridizing Forecasting Systems with AI

Some forecasting components will be fully *replaced by AI*, while others will integrate AI as a *hybrid solution*. Key shifts include:

- *AI-Based Nowcasting*: AI-driven short-term weather predictions using real-time observational data (e.g., satellite, radar, sensors), enhancing or replacing conventional nowcasting techniques.
- *Neural Weather Models*: Deep learning models trained on historical data can generate competitive forecasts at lower computational cost.
- *Hybrid AI-NWP Models*: AI enhances physics-based forecasting through bias correction, uncertainty quantification, and ensemble optimization.
- *Machine Learning for Subgrid Processes*: AI improves or replaces empirical parameterizations in turbulence, cloud physics, and convection models.
- *Automated Impact Forecasting*: AI-driven models provide direct risk assessments for extreme weather events, minimizing reliance on manual interpretation.

AI Forecasting and AI Data Assimilation: New Core Components in the Model Chain

Traditional numerical weather prediction (NWP) relies on physics-based models, but AI is rapidly becoming an integral part of the *full model chain*, improving both forecasting efficiency and data assimilation.

AI-Based Forecasting AI-driven forecasting models are evolving as viable alternatives and enhancements to traditional numerical methods:

- *AI-Based Nowcasting*: Rapid, high-resolution short-term forecasting from observational data, improving local prediction accuracy.
- *Neural Weather Models*: Machine learning models that approximate NWP output with lower computational requirements.
- *Hybrid AI-NWP Models*: AI refining traditional numerical forecasts, enhancing post-processing and uncertainty quantification.

AI in Data Assimilation and Learning Directly from Observations AI is transforming data assimilation, which is essential for initializing forecasts:

- *Machine Learning for Observation Processing*: AI-driven quality control of observational data, filling data gaps and detecting sensor anomalies.
- *AI-Based Data Assimilation*: AI improving assimilation processes by optimizing observation ingestion.
- *Deep Learning for Data Assimilation*: AI learning complex relationships between observations and model states, accelerating assimilation workflows.
- *End-to-End AI Data Ingestion*: Future AI models trained directly on observational datasets, potentially reducing reliance on classical assimilation techniques.
- *Self-Learning Systems*: AI dynamically adjusting to new data, improving continuously without manual recalibration.

Using AI for Code Refactoring and Model Development

AI also modernizes modeling workflows, improving efficiency in research and development:

- *Refactoring Legacy Code*: AI-assisted tools improving *Fortran, C++, and Python* models for better maintainability and performance.
- *Automated Model Optimization*: AI tuning hyperparameters and optimizing computational performance.
- *AI-Assisted Scientific Discovery*: AI identifying new climate and weather patterns in large datasets.
- *AI-Generated Documentation and Testing*: Automating documentation and generating validation tests for numerical models.

Transforming Services and User Interaction with AI

AI enables new ways to deliver weather and climate services, improving *automation, personalization, and accessibility*:

- *AI-Generated Weather Reports*: Natural language generation models translating raw data into meaningful insights for different user groups.
- *Conversational Forecasting Assistants*: AI chatbots and voice assistants allowing users to interactively query weather and climate predictions.
- *Real-Time Impact Forecasting*: AI models directly linking weather forecasts to risks in agriculture, energy, transportation, and disaster management.
- *AI-Powered Data Visualization*: Interactive AI tools allowing users to explore, manipulate, and interpret complex weather datasets.

A Clear Migration Strategy for AI Transformation

To successfully integrate AI while maintaining operational stability, we adopt a *structured migration strategy*:

1. *AI Readiness Assessment*: Identify areas where AI provides the highest impact while ensuring compatibility with existing workflows.
2. *Pilot AI Replacements*: Test AI-based forecasting models in parallel with traditional methods before full adoption.
3. *Hybrid Deployment Strategy*: Introduce AI-driven improvements in *stages*, ensuring fallback options are in place.
4. *AI Validation and Trust Building*: Develop transparent evaluation metrics for AI models to ensure trust and reliability.
5. *Workforce Training and Knowledge Transfer*: Enable teams to transition smoothly from traditional methods to AI-driven solutions.
6. *Continuous AI Governance*: Establish guidelines for AI model retraining, performance monitoring, and ethical considerations.

Limitations and Responsible Use of AI

While AI offers transformative opportunities in forecasting, modeling, and service delivery, it is crucial to acknowledge its current limitations and apply it with scientific caution:

- *Data Requirements*: Most AI models rely on large, high-quality datasets and perform poorly in data-sparse or non-stationary environments.
- *Lack of Physical Consistency*: AI predictions may violate conservation laws or produce unrealistic results in rapidly evolving scenarios.
- *Limited Interpretability*: Unlike traditional models, many AI systems operate as black boxes, making it difficult to understand or trace their internal reasoning.
- *Bias and Overfitting*: Biased or unbalanced training data can lead to flawed predictions, while overfitting to historical data may reduce adaptability to changing climate conditions.
- *Need for Rigorous Validation*: AI models must be continuously monitored, validated, and benchmarked to ensure stability, fairness, and scientific reliability. Validation needs metrics and scores beyond traditional forecasting metrics.
- *Complementary Role*: AI should be seen as an enhancement to—not a replacement for—physics-based modeling, supporting a hybrid approach for trustworthy innovation.

By following this transformation roadmap, we ensure that AI adoption is *structured, scalable, and scientifically sound*, positioning our forecasting and modeling systems for the future.

II General Coding Rules and Strategy

Our coding principles focus on *Maintainability, Testability, and Automation*. Code should be structured, tested, and versioned properly, ensuring long-term reliability and ease of collaboration.

II.1 Code Management with Git

All code is managed in Git, following a structured workflow:

- *Repository Structure*: Organize code into well-defined modules, using a clear folder structure (src/, tests/, docs/).
- *Branching Strategy*: Use a master/dev/feature branching model:
 - master: Production-ready, thoroughly tested.
 - dev: Integration branch for new features.
 - feature/*: Short-lived branches for individual tasks, merged via pull requests.
- *Commits and Documentation*:
 - Each commit should contain *atomic changes* with clear commit messages (`git commit -m "Refactored data pipeline for efficiency"`).
 - You might use Git hooks for enforcing style checks (e.g., pre-commit for black and flake8).

Essential Git Commands and Best Practices

Git is a distributed version control system, enabling efficient collaboration. The following commands cover the most common workflows. We usually employ git via gitlab or github, but you can use it yourself on any linux system, letting your own repo work as a server for you, and do git add/commit/push as with some gitlab installation!

Initializing and Cloning Repositories

```
git init # Initialize a new Git repository
git clone <repo-url> # Clone an existing repository
```

Working with Branches

```
git branch feature-xyz           # Create a new branch
git checkout feature-xyz         # Switch to a branch
git switch -c feature-xyz       # Create and switch to a branch (newer Git versions)
git checkout -b mylocalname origin/reponame # Track a remote branch with a local name
git merge feature-xyz           # Merge changes into the current branch
git rebase main                 # Reapply commits on top of the main branch
```

Committing and Pushing Changes

```
git status # Show modified files
git add . # Stage all changes
git commit -m "Describe your change" # Commit changes
git push origin feature-xyz # Push changes to the remote repository
```

Syncing and Undoing Changes

```
git pull origin main # Update the local branch with remote changes
git reset --hard HEAD~1 # Undo the last commit
git checkout -- <file> # Revert changes to a file before commit
```

Tracking and Reviewing History

```
git log --oneline --graph --decorate # View commit history
git diff # Show uncommitted changes
git blame <file> # Show line-by-line history of changes
```

Best Practices for Git Usage

- *Commit frequently*: Avoid large, monolithic commits.
- *Write meaningful commit messages*: Summarize what and why, not just how.

- *Rebase instead of merge (when appropriate)*: Keeps history linear.
- *Use .gitignore*: Prevent unnecessary files from being tracked.
- *Pull before pushing*: Avoid conflicts by updating from the remote branch.
- *Tag important versions*: Use git tag v1.0 for release milestones.

Adding a .gitignore File for LaTeX Projects

Before committing files to a Git repository, it's important to add a .gitignore file to prevent cluttering the version history for example with automatically generated LaTeX files. These include temporary files, auxiliary logs, and build artifacts that should not be tracked. Here's a recommended .gitignore for LaTeX projects:

```
# LaTeX intermediate and output files
*.aux
*.bb1
*.blg
*.brf
*.fdb_latexmk
*.fls
*.idx
*.ilg
*.ind
*.lof
*.log
*.lot
*.nav
*.out
*.pdf
*.snm
*.synctex.gz
*.toc
*.vrb
*.xdv

# Editor backup files
*~
*.swp
.DS_Store
```

This ensures that only the actual source files (e.g., .tex, .bib, .sty, images, and configuration files) are tracked in your repository.

Best Practices for Repository Management

- *Do not commit large binaries or large images into a GitLab or any other code repository!*

- *Keep project-related materials (e.g., PowerPoint presentations) in separate repositories from code development!*

Usually, it is a good idea to have your project repo with branches in a place where storage limitations are not important. You can use a local git repo to make sure your own versions on different computers are well synchronized, and clone and push into a central space on some linux server. Use gitlab or github to manage code repos.

- *Do not store measurement or model data in a Git repository!*
- Manage data instead in accessible folders with a clear and documented structure, or store it in a database environment.

II.2 Managing Multiple Git Repositories for AI Development

AI-based applications for weather, climate, and environmental forecasting often involve multiple interconnected repositories, such as core models, data pipelines, and frontend applications. Efficiently managing and synchronizing these repositories is essential, especially in large-scale initiatives like the *EUMETNET E-AI Programme on Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning for Weather, Climate, and Environmental Applications* or the *DWD AI Center*. When we want to work both with e.g. DWD repos, MeteoFrance repos, Anemol repos and your local repos, a careful repo management is in order.

To facilitate multi-repo workflows, we either use lean and elementary scripts such as gitall or we employ a combination of meta (for managing multiple repositories as a single unit) and git worktree (for handling multiple branches efficiently).

Elementary Git Repository Management Script To streamline the handling of multiple Git repositories in a single parent folder, we provide the script gitall.sh (located in ./scripts). Its key features and usage recommendations are:

- *Location:* The script is located in the ./scripts directory.
- *Function:* It checks the status of all Git repositories or updates them with git pull commands.
- *Usage examples:*
 - ./gitall.sh pull – Pulls the latest changes in all repositories.
 - ./gitall.sh s – Shows the Git status for all repositories.
 - ./gitall.sh pull s – Pulls and then shows the status.
- *Recommendation:* Create a symbolic link (e.g., ln -s ./scripts/gitall.sh /bin/gitall) to call it globally.
- *Documentation:* Detailed usage information is included as comments at the top of the script.

The script is easily extensible to your particular needs.

Organizing Repositories with Meta The package `meta` enables structured management of multiple repositories by defining them in a single `meta.json` file. This allows users to clone, update, and execute commands across all repositories in a unified manner.

```
{  
  "projects": {  
    "eai-tutorials": "https://github.com/eumetnet-e-ai/tutorials.git",  
    "eai-toolbox-explore": "https://gitlab.dkrz.de/dwd-ki-zentrum/\\  
infrastructure/e-ai_toolbox_explore"  
  }  
}
```

With this setup, all repositories can be cloned simultaneously using:

```
meta git clone
```

Efficient Branch Management with Git Worktree

For AI research and development, multiple experiments and feature branches often need to be managed simultaneously. Instead of constantly switching branches, `git worktree` allows separate working directories for each branch.

To create worktrees for feature branches:

```
meta exec "git worktree add ../feature-dwd-ai feature-branch"  
meta exec "git worktree add ../feature-eai-pipeline feature-branch"
```

This approach provides a clean way to work on different tasks in parallel without redundant repository clones.

Automation and Best Practices To ensure consistency in AI workflows:

- Pull updates across repositories with:

```
meta exec "git pull origin main"
```

- Regularly clean up unused worktrees:

```
meta exec "git worktree prune"
```

- Store `meta.json` in version control to ensure reproducibility across teams.
- Automate workflows via CI/CD pipelines to test and deploy AI models across repositories.

By integrating `meta` and `git worktree`, the DWD AI Center and EUMETNET E-AI Programme can maintain a structured and efficient workflow, allowing researchers and engineers to focus on AI model development rather than repository management.

II.3 Testing and Continuous Integration

To maintain quality, every function and module should have explicit *unit tests*, written with pytest. We encourage a *test-driven development (TDD)* approach where applicable.

- *Unit Testing*: Every function should be covered by a test to catch potential bugs early.
- *Integration Testing*: Ensure different components interact correctly, particularly in model training and evaluation pipelines.
- *Automated Testing*:
 - Git push should be able to trigger a *CI/CD pipeline* that runs all tests.
 - Developers should be able to run pytest locally before committing changes.
 - Centralized CI testing (e.g., GitHub Actions, GitLab CI/CD, Jenkins) should validate code before deployment.

II.4 Code Quality and Documentation

Maintaining high code readability and quality is essential. The following standards apply:

- *Code Formatting*: Enforce coding standards using black (formatting), flake8 (linting), and mypy (type checking).
- *Pre-Commit Hooks*: Automate checks to prevent incorrect code from being committed.
- *Documentation*:
 - Every function and class should include *docstrings* in Google or NumPy format.
 - API documentation should be maintained using mkdocs or Sphinx.

II.5 Reproducibility and Environment Management

To ensure consistent execution across different systems:

- *Dependency Management*:
 - Use virtual environments such as venv, Poetry, or Pipenv for managing dependencies.
 - Store dependencies explicitly in pyproject.toml (Poetry) or requirements.txt (pip).
- *Containerization*:
 - Use Docker to provide isolated, reproducible environments.
 - Maintain *pre-configured environments* for development and production.

II.6 Automated Workflows and Continuous Deployment

Automation is key to ensuring reliability and scalability:

- *CI/CD Pipelines*: Tests, builds, and deployments should at least in principle be fully automated, meaning that necessary human based evaluation and reviews are built into an automated process which is thoroughly tested.
- *Model Retraining and Monitoring*: Machine learning models will probably be retrained on a regular basis, with performance monitoring to track drift.
- *Version Control for Models*: Every trained model should be versioned for reproducibility.

We remark that most of these steps are standard in the framework of *Numerical Weather Prediction*, where code management for models and data assimilation code has a long tradition. Also, running a very organized process including

- **code development**,
- small and large-scale **testing**,
- **evaluation** and **verification**,
- **decision making** based on the results and
- deployment through an operational system with **parallel routine** and
- **routine** runs based on ecflow schedulers

is best-practice in NWP centres. At DWD, we run a weekly *routine meeting* where evaluation results and decisions are made for the NWP forecasting system. Scripting systems for full-scale NWP experiments are available both for fast development and routine-type testing and deployment. AI applications can seamlessly be integrated into this approach, which guarantees quality assurance and flexibility at the same time.

II.7 Basic Coding Principles

- Use meaningful variable names and keep functions concise.
- Follow PEP8 for consistent Python code style.
- Avoid hardcoded values; instead, use configuration files.
- Ensure all functions include a well-defined docstring.

II.8 Git and Collaboration Best Practices

To maintain a clean and organized codebase:

- Follow a structured Git workflow using `main`, `dev`, and `feature/*` branches.
- Ensure commits are atomic, with a clear description of changes.
- Use Git hooks to enforce style checks automatically before committing.

II.9 Testing and Quality Assurance

Before merging code:

- Every function should have a corresponding unit test.
- Tests should be run locally before pushing changes to Git.
- CI/CD pipelines must validate all code changes with unit and integration tests.

II.10 Deployment and Reproducibility

To ensure stable production releases:

- No code is merged into master unless all tests pass.
- Machine learning models should be retrained periodically with performance monitoring.
- Environments should be reproducible using virtual environments with requirements files or Docker containers.

Structure of the DWD AI Centre

We note that the Structure of the DWD AI Centre as shown in Figure 1 is highly dynamic, with projects and repos being in a process of setup and consolidation. The following graphics provides a snapshot and example layout as currently pursued.

- The DWD AI Centre connects internal development units, contributors, and public users to shared infrastructure and applications.
- The repository structure is grouped into *Apps*, *Infrastructure*, and *Externals*, each containing specific projects for modeling, processing, and integration.
- The central node acts as the coordination hub, linking various AI-driven tools with operational workflows and collaborative partners.

III 6 Days Python and AI

III.1 Schedule

The following table provides an overview of the tutorial structure, covering key topics in Python programming, artificial intelligence, and machine learning for applications in weather, climate, and environmental sciences. The tutorial is designed as a structured six-day course, with each day focusing on a specific theme. The content progresses from fundamental Python concepts and data handling to advanced AI techniques such as large language models (LLMs), retrieval-augmented generation (RAG), and AI-driven forecasting. We introduce many practical applications, and advanced topics including AI data assimilation, model emulation, and AI-enhanced operational workflows. Each day consists of multiple modules, ensuring a comprehensive and hands-on learning experience.

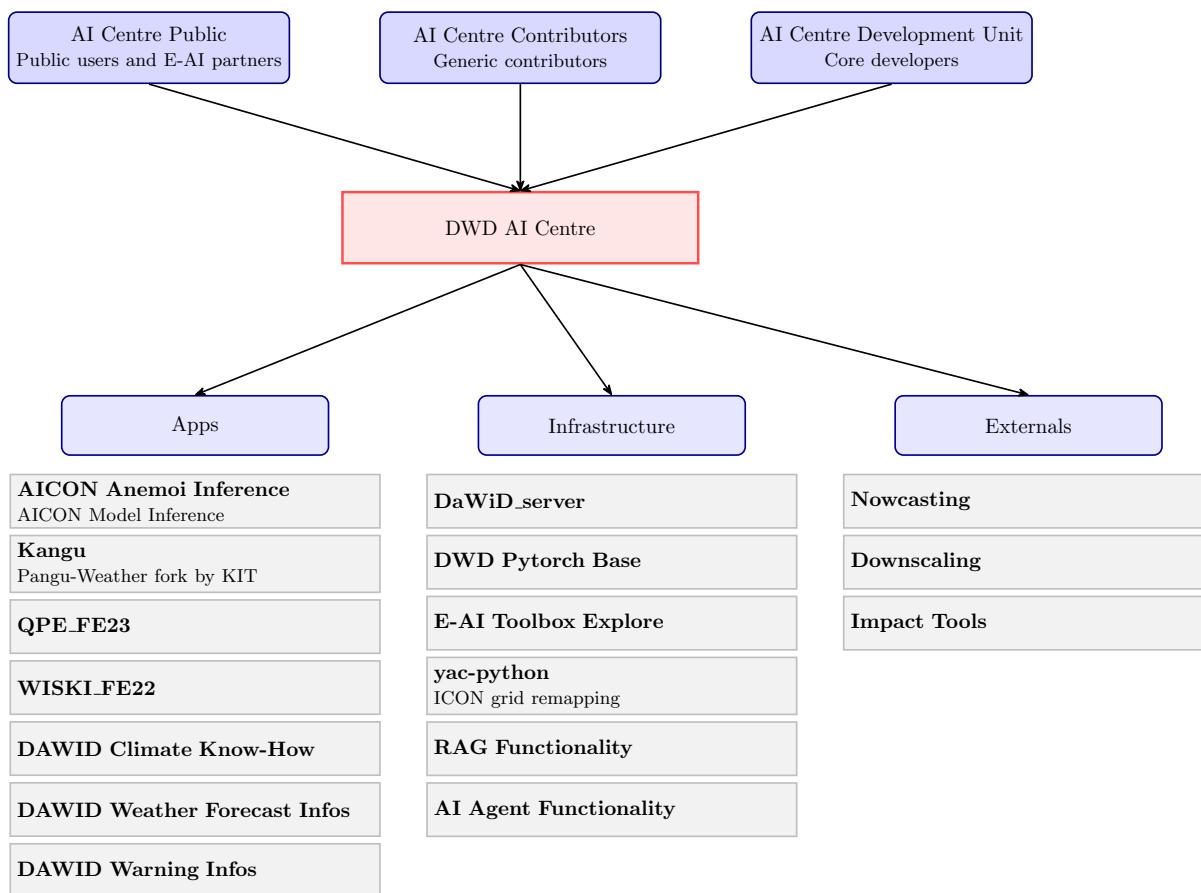


Figure 1: Organizational and technical structure of the DWD AI Centre repositories.

Chapter	Title	Sections
Day 1: Python as Workhorse		
1	Python Basics	Python syntax, data types, control structures, functions, file I/O
2	Jupyter Notebooks, APIs and Servers	Setting up Jupyter, working with APIs, creating servers
3	Eccodes for Grib, Opendata, NetCDF, Observations, Visualization	GRIB and NetCDF handling with eccodes, accessing OpenData, visualization techniques
Day 2: AI/ML Basic Introduction		
4	Machine Learning Basics	Supervised and unsupervised learning, data pre-processing, model evaluation
5	Neural Network Architectures	Feedforward Networks, Graph Neural Networks, Convolutional Networks, Transformers
6	Large Language Models	LLM network structure, Installing and using Olama, Python API, Local UI with history
Day 3: LLM RAG, Python Packages, Multi-Modality		

Chapter	Title	Sections
7	LLM with Retrieval-Augmented Generation (RAG)	Introduction to RAG, Installing dependencies, Loading and processing documents, Generating embeddings, Using FAISS, Retrieving documents, Response generation
8	Python Packages	Python Standard Library, Xarray basics, Pandas, SciPy, Scikit-learn
9	Multimodal LLMs	Modalities, Integration, Fusion, Cross-Attention, Use Cases, AI Interaction, Data Alignment, Benchmarking
Day 4: GPUs, AI Agents, Services and Impact		
10	Using GPUs for Training Applications	Checking GPU availability, Installing dependencies, Exploring GPU tensors, Training models on GPU, Comparing CPU vs GPU
11	Agents and Coding with LLM	Introduction to LLM coding, Agent frameworks, LangChain example, Auto-GPT example
12	LLMs for Geosciences, Weather, and Climate	Feature Detection, Weather Reports, Forecast Interpretation, Communication, Impact Forecasting, Decision Support
Day 5: LLM Maturity and Operations		
13	MLFlow - Managing and Monitoring Training	Setting up MLFlow, Monitoring Training, Comparing Experiments, Managing Parameters
14	MLOps - Operations	Principles, Workflow, Deployment, Monitoring, CI/CD, Automation, Reproducibility, Scalability, Kubernetes, Cloud, On-Premise
15	Fine-Tuning LLMs	Fine-Tuning, LLMs, Dataset Preparation, Tokenization, LoRA, Reinforcement Learning, Evaluation, Deployment, Scalability
Day 6: AI Model and AI Data Assimilation		
16	Anemol	Overview of Anemol and its capabilities
17	Model Emulation and AICON	Emulating weather models with AI, AICON framework
18	AI Data Assimilation	AI-driven data assimilation, Applications in numerical weather prediction
Appendix: Background and Additional Topics		
A1	Large Language Models - History and Development	History and evolution of LLMs, Key architectures and breakthroughs
A2	Advanced GPU Utilization	Mixed-precision training, Model parallelism, Efficient GPU scheduling
A3	Future Trends in AI and Weather Forecasting	Hybrid AI-NWP models, Real-time assimilation, AI-driven extreme event forecasting

III.2 Training Codes

To ensure a structured and reproducible learning experience, all training codes are provided *chapter by chapter*. This should allow participants to *easily locate, reference, and execute* the relevant

scripts corresponding to specific tutorial sections.

We have tested the scripts as far as possible for the following computing environments and give specific advice when things were difficult in a particular framework.

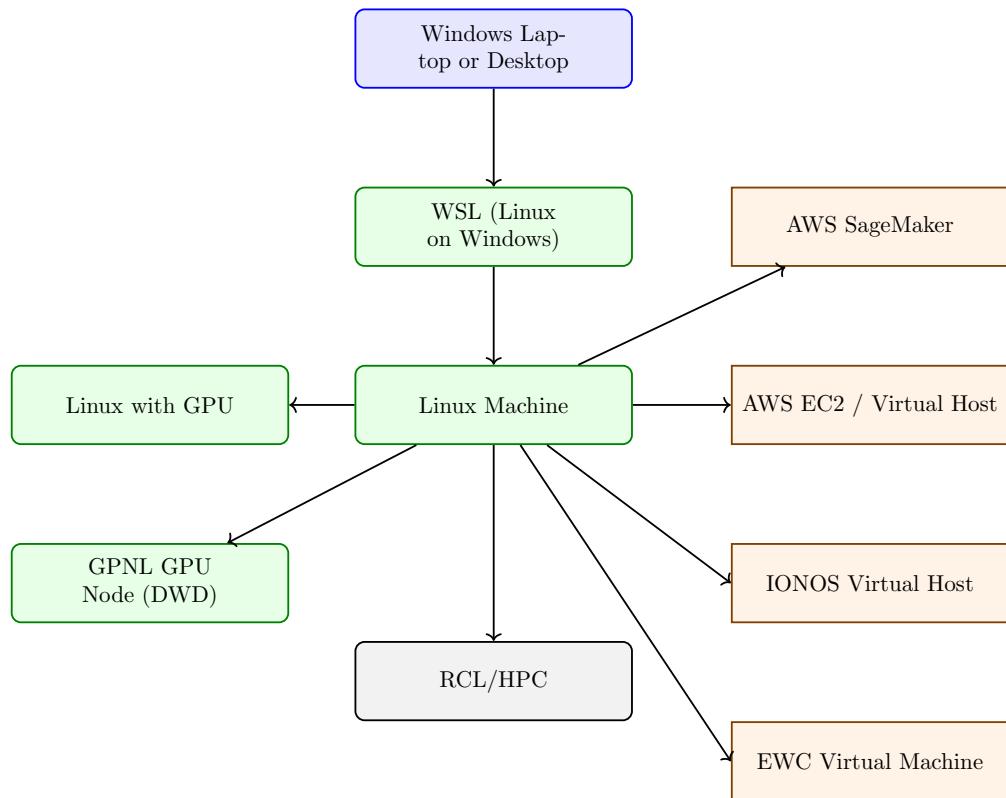


Figure 2: We want to enable choices and independence of particular solutions or infrastructures.

Chapter 1

Python Basics

We do not want to provide a full python tutorial, but rather formulate a guide through main steps and a setup which is very flexible to work with python and machine learning for weather, climate and environment.

Our goal is to enable our scientists and developers to use python and machine learning in a flexible, modular and portable way for their development, for science as well as for products and services of various types. On the basis of python in combination with large language models we will touch the full workflow for science, development, product design and deployment.

1.1 Install, Virtual Environment, Pip und Import

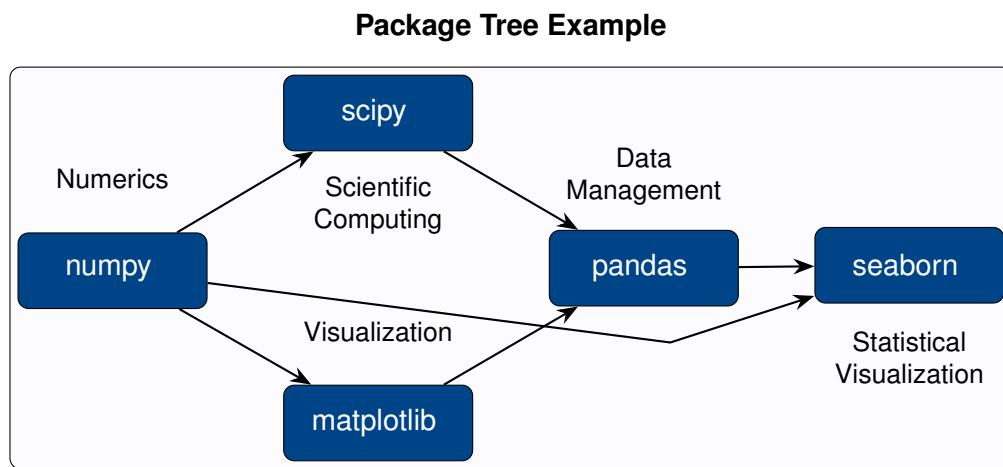
1.1.1 Install and Virtual Environment

Before running Python commands, ensure you have Python installed. It is very easy to have Python installed on your laptop by simply downloading it - this is often possible without administration rights. You will then need to set the path variable properly. On Linux, depending on the version installed by your system administrator, you may find the executable under `python`, `python3`, `python3.11` or `python3.12`. We recommend not working with versions earlier than Python 3.10 because you may run into compatibility issues; instead, make sure you have an up-to-date Python version installed. Test the installed version by:

Test Python Installation

```
1 python --version
```

Python has become one of the most popular programming languages, largely because of its extensive ecosystem of packages and libraries. From data analysis and visualization to machine learning and web development, Python's modular design allows you to choose only the components you need.



It is very important to learn to manage packages to build a robust and tailored development environment. Learning how to install, manage, and create packages not only gives you a deeper understanding of the available tools, but also grants you greater control over your projects.

Usually, it is very important for a particular Python environment to provide a complete list of the packages it needs, with their versions, in a consistent framework. This framework is provided by virtual environments.

A virtual environment allows you to control your package installations. Below are example commands for both Windows and Linux:

Windows Command

```

1 python -m venv myenv
2 myenv\Scripts\activate
  
```

Linux Command

```

1 python3 -m venv myenv
2 source myenv/bin/activate
  
```

This will create a `myenv` directory with the default venv file structure. `myenv` is the freely choosable name of the venv.

1.1.2 Using pip to Manage Python Packages

`pip` is the package installer for Python. It allows you to install, update, and manage packages from the Python Package Index (PyPI). For example, you can check the version of `pip`, list installed packages, and install popular packages like `numpy` and `matplotlib`. The following commands illustrate these basic operations:

Basic pip Commands

```

1 pip --version
  
```

```
2 pip list
3 pip install numpy
4 pip install matplotlib
```

These commands, when run in your command prompt or terminal, will display the current version of pip, show all installed Python packages, and install numpy and matplotlib, respectively.

One of the most widely used libraries in Python is NumPy, which provides powerful array objects and routines for fast numerical computation.

1.2 Managing Dependencies with requirements.txt

Managing dependencies is crucial in Python projects, especially when working in different environments or collaborating with others. The requirements.txt file allows you to list all your project's dependencies and their versions, making it easy to replicate the environment anywhere.

Generating a requirements.txt

If you already have a virtual environment set up and want to generate a requirements.txt file from it, first activate your current virtual environment. Once the virtual environment is activated, run the following command to generate the requirements.txt file:

Generate requirements.txt

```
1 pip freeze > requirements.txt
```

This creates a file named requirements.txt in your current working directory containing all installed packages and their versions, leading to e.g. the following simple requirements.txt file.

Requirements.txt example

```
1 numpy==1.26.4
2 ollama==0.3.1
3 openai==1.69.0
4 openai-whisper==20240930
5 toml==0.10.2
6 torch==2.4.0
7 torch_geometric==2.5.3
8 torchmetrics==1.4.1
9 torchvision==0.19.0
```

Installing Dependencies from requirements.txt

To install all dependencies from an existing requirements.txt file into a new virtual environment, first create and activate the environment as shown in Section 1.1.1. Then, run the following

command:

Install Dependencies from requirements.txt

```
1 pip install -r requirements.txt
```

This installs all packages listed in the `requirements.txt` file, ensuring that your environment matches the specified dependencies.

With these steps, you can easily share and reproduce Python environments using `requirements.txt`.

1.2.1 Importing Functions or Packages vs. Installation

In Python, you can either directly import functions and modules from local files or install packages to make them globally available across projects. Understanding the difference is essential for maintaining clean and scalable code.

Importing Functions or Packages

You can import Python modules or functions directly from local `.py` files. For example, if you have the following structure:

```
|  
|-- main_greetings.py  
|-- greetings.py
```

In `main_greetings.py`, you can import from `greetings.py` as follows:

main_greetings.py

```
1 # main_greetings.py  
2 from greetings import say_hello  
3  
4 say_hello()
```

This method is quick and easy for small projects but becomes difficult to manage as your codebase grows or when sharing across multiple projects. You should then create installable packages, we discuss in a moment.

The `importlib` Package in Python

The `importlib` package allows you to reload Python modules without restarting the interpreter, which is especially useful during development when modifying code. Normally, Python imports a module only once per session, but `importlib.reload(module)` forces the interpreter to reload it, reflecting any recent changes. This is particularly handy in interactive environments like Jupyter Notebooks, where you want to see immediate updates after editing a module without restarting the entire session.

reload_demo_fkt.py

```

1 # reload_demo_fkt.py
2
3 def greet(name):
4     return f"Hello {name}"

```

And now lets load it, then change the file and reload it.

reload_demo.py

```

1 # reload_demo.py
2
3 import importlib
4 import reload_demo_fkt as mo
5
6 def replace_in_file(str1, str2, filename):
7     with open(filename, 'r') as file:
8         content = file.read()
9     content = content.replace(str1, str2)
10    with open(filename, 'w') as file:
11        file.write(content)
12
13 # Call the greet function initially
14 print(mo.greet("Roland")) # Expected: Hello Roland
15
16 # After modifying reload_demo_fkt.py, reload it
17 replace_in_file("Hello", "Good Morning", "reload_demo_fkt.py")
18
19 importlib.reload(mo)
20
21 # Call the updated greet function
22 print(mo.greet("Roland")) # Expected: Good Morning Roland
23
24 # Restore the original version of the file
25 replace_in_file("Good Morning", "Hello", "reload_demo_fkt.py")

```

Creating an Installable Python Package

An installable package allows you to reuse and share code easily across different environments. Consider the following structure:

```

install_demo02/
|-- pyproject.toml
|-- README.md
+++ src/
    --- install_demo02/
        |-- __init__.py
        |-- install_mod1.py

```

```
-- install_mod2.py
```

The project is defined in a `pyproject.toml` file, which can include a list of dependencies, that would replace the `requirements.txt`:

```
basic pyproject.toml file
```

```

1 [build-system]
2 requires = [ "setuptools>=61"]
3 build-backend = "setuptools.build_meta"
4
5 [project]
6 name = "install_demo02"      # name of the directory in src/
7 version = "0.1.3"
8 description = "A simple Python package with greeting functions"
9 authors = [
10   { name = "Roland Potthast", email = "Roland.Potthast@dwd.de" },
11 ]
12 requires-python = ">=3.8"
13 #dependencies = ["numpy<2", "matplotlib",]
14
15 [tool.setuptools.packages.find]
16 where = ["src"]
```

To install your package locally, in the code folder run:

```
Install Your Package
```

```
1 pip install -e install_demo02/
```

Once installed, you can import it in any project without reference to the location of the package, as in the file `install_demo_test_script.py`:

```
install_demo_test_script.py
```

```

1 from install_demo02 import greet1, greet2
2
3 print(greet1("World")) # Hello World!
4 print(greet2("World")) # Good Morning World!
```

Legacy projects with setup.py

Before `pyproject.toml` was invented, packages were defined in a `setup.py` file. One can find an example package using `setup.py` in the code/`install_demo` directory.

To make `setup.py` work on Windows, one might has to use the following steps.

```
pip install setuptools wheel
pip install -e install_demo/ --no-build-isolation --no-use-pep517
```

When to use each approach:

- *Pure Import*: Use for small, single-project code or quick prototypes.
- *Installable Package*: Use for larger projects, sharing code, and managing dependencies.

Example: Installing from GitHub

You can also install packages directly from Git repositories. For example:

Install from GitHub

```
1 pip install git+https://github.com/username/my_package.git
```

This installs your package from GitHub, making it easy to share code across teams and projects.

1.2.2 What is PyPI?

The Python Package Index (**PyPI**) is the official repository for third-party Python packages. It allows developers to:

- Upload and share their Python projects with the community.
- Install packages using the pip tool.
- Manage versions and dependencies of published packages.

When a user runs `pip install some-package`, pip connects to PyPI to find and download the corresponding package.

To make a project available on PyPI, developers package their code (typically using `pyproject.toml` and tools like `setuptools` or `flit`), build the distribution, and upload it using `twine`.

Uploaded packages are then publicly available for installation and reuse.

For more information, visit the official website:

<https://pypi.org>

1.3 Introduction to NumPy

NumPy is the fundamental package for numerical computing in Python. It provides the `ndarray`, a multidimensional array object that enables fast vectorized operations and efficient handling of large datasets. Although Python is known for its readability, NumPy's power lies in its ability to perform operations on entire arrays without writing explicit loops—a major benefit for programmers experienced in other languages.

In NumPy, the core building block is the `ndarray`. An `ndarray` can be created from a Python list (or nested lists for multidimensional arrays), and it supports element-wise operations. This vectorized computation model is not only more concise but also significantly faster for large-scale computations. Consider the following example:

Creating Basic Arrays

```
1 import numpy as np
2 arr1 = np.array([1, 2, 3, 4, 5])
3 print("1D array:", arr1)
4 arr2 = np.array([[1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6]])
5 print("2D array:")
6 print(arr2)
```

The code above shows how to import NumPy (commonly aliased as np) and create both one-dimensional and two-dimensional arrays. Instead of writing loops to process elements, you can use array operations that are both elegant and efficient.

1.3.1 Vectorized Operations and Predefined Arrays

One of NumPy's most powerful features is vectorized operations. Instead of iterating over each element, you can perform operations on entire arrays with a single expression:

Vectorized Operations

```
1 import numpy as np
2 a = np.array([1, 2, 3, 4, 5])
3 b = np.array([10, 20, 30, 40, 50])
4 c = a + b
5 d = a * b
6 print("Addition:", c)
7 print("Multiplication:", d)
```

In addition to these operations, NumPy offers a variety of functions for creating arrays with predefined values. This is useful for initializing data or generating test datasets:

Predefined Arrays

```
1 import numpy as np
2 zeros = np.zeros((3, 4))
3 print("Zeros array:")
4 print(zeros)
5 ones = np.ones((2, 5))
6 print("Ones array:")
7 print(ones)
8 range_array = np.arange(0, 10, 2)
9 print("Range array:", range_array)
10 linspace_array = np.linspace(0, 1, 5)
11 print("Linspace array:", linspace_array)
```

1.3.2 Slicing, Indexing, and Broadcasting

NumPy arrays support powerful slicing and indexing methods, similar to Python lists but extended to multiple dimensions. This feature allows you to extract subarrays efficiently without copying the data:

Slicing and Indexing

```
1 import numpy as np
2 matrix = np.array([[ 1,  2,  3,  4],
3                   [ 5,  6,  7,  8],
4                   [ 9, 10, 11, 12],
5                   [13, 14, 15, 16]])
6 submatrix = matrix[1:4, 1:4]
7 print("Submatrix:")
8 print(submatrix)
9 element = matrix[1, 2]
10 print("Element at (2,3):", element)
```

Broadcasting allows operations between arrays of different shapes. With broadcasting, NumPy automatically expands the dimensions of an array during arithmetic operations:

Broadcasting Example

```
1 import numpy as np
2 mat = np.array([[1, 2, 3],
3                 [4, 5, 6],
4                 [7, 8, 9]])
5 vec = np.array([1, 0, -1])
6 result = mat - vec
7 print("Broadcasting result:")
8 print(result)
```

1.3.3 Mathematical Functions and Applications

NumPy offers a comprehensive suite of mathematical functions that operate element-wise on arrays. Whether you need trigonometric, logarithmic, or exponential functions, NumPy has you covered:

Mathematical Functions

```
1 import numpy as np
2 angles = np.linspace(0, np.pi, 5)
3 print("Angles:", angles)
4 sine_values = np.sin(angles)
5 print("Sine values:", sine_values)
6 exp_values = np.exp(np.array([0, 1, 2]))
7 print("Exponential values:", exp_values)
```

Using these functions, you can perform complex numerical computations with minimal code. For example, you might model a physical phenomenon or simulate data; NumPy's capabilities allow you to transform and analyze data efficiently. Experiment with these examples, and explore further functionalities of NumPy to fully leverage Python's capabilities in scientific computing.

Recommendation

Make sure you know your basic python commands well! Initially, do not rely only on sophisticated packages. Keep the core python level as your active knowledge!

1.4 Generating Plots based on Matplotlib

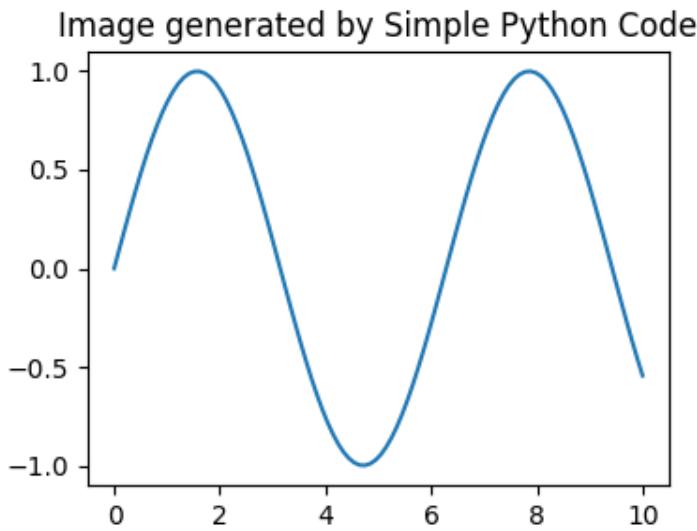
Paired with Matplotlib, a versatile plotting library, you can quickly visualize data and test your ideas.

1.4.1 1D Plots

The following example demonstrates how to use these libraries to plot a simple curve. In this code snippet, we generate a sine wave using NumPy and then plot it with Matplotlib.

plot-sine-wave.py

```
1 import numpy as np
2 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
3
4 # Generate data
5 x = np.linspace(0, 10, 100)
6 y = np.sin(x)
7
8 # Create the plot
9 plt.figure(figsize=(4, 3))
10 plt.plot(x, y)
11 plt.xlabel('x')
12 plt.ylabel('sin(x)')
13 plt.title('Image generated by Simple Python Code')
14
15 # Save the plot as a PNG file
16 plt.savefig('images/plot-sine-wave.png')
17 plt.close() # Close the figure to free up memory
```



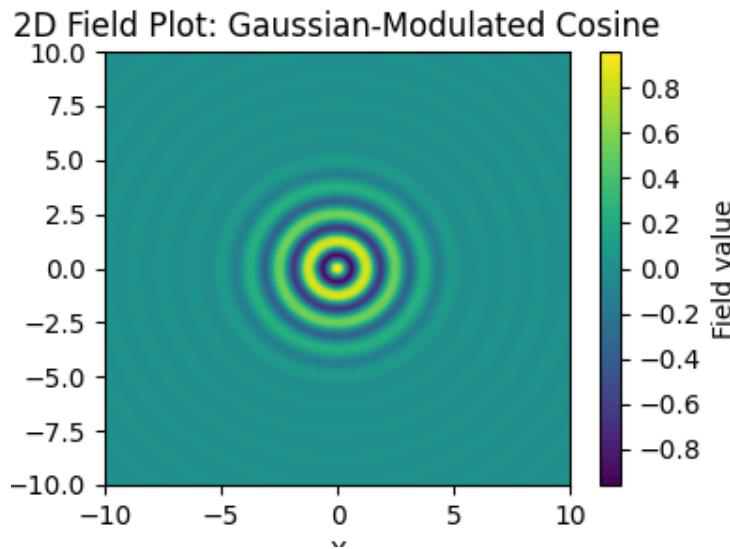
1.4.2 2D Plots

The following code demonstrates how to generate and visualize a two-dimensional field using NumPy and Matplotlib. First, a symmetric grid of x and y values is created and the radial distance from the origin is computed. Then, a Gaussian-modulated cosine function is used to define a smoothly varying field that decays with distance from the center. Finally, a filled contour plot is generated to visualize the field, and the resulting image is saved as a PNG file.

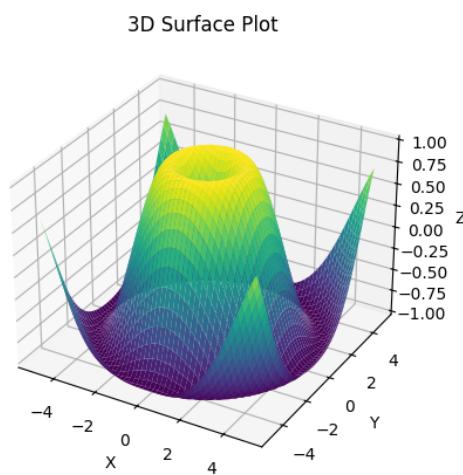
plot-gaussian-modulated-cosine-field.py

```
1 import numpy as np
2 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
3
4 # Create a grid of x and y values (centered at 0 for a symmetric field)
5 x = np.linspace(-10, 10, 200)
6 y = np.linspace(-10, 10, 200)
7 X, Y = np.meshgrid(x, y)
8
9 # Compute the radial distance from the origin
10 R = np.sqrt(X**2 + Y**2)
11
12 # Define a Gaussian-modulated cosine field
13 Z = np.exp(-0.1*(X**2 + Y**2)) * np.cos(5*R)
14
15 # Create a filled contour plot for the 2D field
16 plt.figure(figsize=(4, 3))
17 contour = plt.contourf(X, Y, Z, levels=50, cmap='viridis')
18 plt.colorbar(contour, label='Field value')
19 plt.xlabel('X')
20 plt.ylabel('Y')
21 plt.title('2D Field Plot: Gaussian-Modulated Cosine')
```

```
22 plt.savefig('images/plot-gaussian-modulated-cosine-field.png')
23 plt.close()
```



The next example demonstrates how to create a simple 3D surface plot using Matplotlib's built-in `mpl_toolkit` toolkit. By generating a meshgrid of x and y values and computing a corresponding z value from a radial sine function, the plot visualizes a three-dimensional wave-like pattern. This technique provides a straightforward way to represent and explore three-dimensional data in Python.



1.5 Functions

Python functions are reusable blocks of code that allow you to encapsulate logic and perform specific tasks. In Python, functions are defined using the `def` keyword and can take parameters, return values, and include documentation. The following sections introduce the basics of defining and using functions in Python.

1.5.1 Defining a Function

Functions are defined with the `def` keyword followed by the function name, parentheses containing any parameters, and a colon. The function body is indented. Here is a basic example that defines a function to greet a user:

Defining a Function

```
1 def greet(name):
2     """Return a greeting message."""
3     return f"Hello, {name}!"
```

1.5.2 Calling a Function

Once a function is defined, you can call it by using its name followed by parentheses containing any required arguments. The following example shows how to call the `greet` function and print its result:

Calling a Function

```
1 message = greet("Alice")
2 print(message)
```

1.5.3 Functions with Multiple Parameters

A function can accept multiple parameters. Below is an example of a function that calculates the area of a rectangle:

Function with Multiple Parameters

```
1 def rectangle_area(width, height):
2     """Calculate the area of a rectangle."""
3     return width * height
4
5 area = rectangle_area(5, 3)
6 print("The area of the rectangle is:", area)
```

1.5.4 Default Parameter Values

Python functions can have default parameter values, which are used when an argument is not provided. This example demonstrates a function that computes a power, using a default exponent of 2:

Default Parameter Values

```
1 def power(number, exponent=2):
2     """Return number raised to the power of exponent."""
3     return number ** exponent
4
5 print(power(4))      # Uses default exponent 2 (result: 16)
6 print(power(2, 3))  # Exponent explicitly set to 3 (result: 8)
```

Variable-Length Arguments

Sometimes, you may not know in advance how many arguments a function should accept. Python allows you to capture additional positional arguments using the `*args` syntax. In the following example, a function computes the sum of an arbitrary number of numbers:

Variable-Length Arguments

```
1 def total_sum(*args):
2     """Return the sum of all provided arguments."""
3     return sum(args)
4
5 print(total_sum(1, 2, 3, 4, 5))  # Output: 15
```

1.6 Python Essentials

Let us look at a survey table what basic python knowledge you should gain in a first step. We have already gone over some significant part of this, and will briefly give you a head-start for the remaining points.

1.6.1 Control Flow in Python

Control flow in Python refers to the order in which individual statements, instructions, or function calls are executed. Python provides several structures for controlling the flow of your program, including conditionals, loops, and exception handling.

Conditional Statements

Conditional statements allow you to execute different code blocks based on certain conditions.

Topic	Description
Python Syntax	Basic structure, indentation, comments
Data Types	Integers, floats, strings, booleans, lists, tuples, sets, dictionaries
Control Flow	if-else, for and while loops, break, continue
Functions	Defining functions with def, arguments, return values, lambda functions
Modules and Imports	Importing built-in and external libraries, creating custom modules
File I/O	Reading and writing files, using with statements
Exception Handling	Using try-except for error handling
Object-Oriented Programming (OOP)	Classes, objects, inheritance, and polymorphism
Standard Libraries	Common libraries like os, sys, math, datetime, json
Virtual Environments	Creating and managing virtual environments with venv or conda

Table 1.1: Essential Topics for Basic Python Learning

Example:

```
If-Else Statements

1 x = 10
2 if x > 0:
3     print("Positive")
4 elif x == 0:
5     print("Zero")
6 else:
7     print("Negative")
```

Loops

Loops allow you to repeat a block of code multiple times.

For Loop Example:

```
For Loop

1 for i in range(5):
2     print(i)
```

While Loop Example:

While Loop

```
1 count = 0
2 while count < 5:
3     print(count)
4     count += 1
```

Loop Control Statements

Python provides special statements to control the flow inside loops:

- break – Exits the loop prematurely.
- continue – Skips the rest of the current iteration.
- pass – Does nothing and acts as a placeholder.

Example with break and continue:

Loop Control Example

```
1 for i in range(10):
2     if i == 3:
3         continue # Skip 3
4     if i == 7:
5         break # Stop loop at 7
6     print(i)
```

Exception Handling

Python allows you to handle errors using try-except blocks to prevent program crashes.

Example:

Try-Except Block

```
1 try:
2     result = 10 / 0
3 except ZeroDivisionError:
4     print("Cannot divide by zero!")
```

Summary: Control flow structures are essential for building logical and efficient Python programs, allowing you to make decisions, iterate over data, and handle errors gracefully.

1.6.2 File Input and Output in Python

Python provides built-in functions to handle files, making it easy to read from and write to files. This section covers the basics of File I/O operations.

Opening and Closing Files

To work with files, you need to open them first using the `open()` function and close them when done using `close()`.

Example:

Open and Close a File

```
1 file = open('example.txt', 'r') # Open in read mode
2 content = file.read() # Read the file content
3 file.close() # Close the file
```

Reading from Files

Python provides multiple methods to read file content:

- `read()` – Reads the entire file.
- `readline()` – Reads one line at a time.
- `readlines()` – Reads all lines into a list.

Example:

Reading from a File

```
1 with open('example.txt', 'r') as file:
2     for line in file:
3         print(line.strip())
```

Writing to Files

To write to a file, open it in write mode ('w') or append mode ('a').

Example:

Writing to a File

```
1 with open('output.txt', 'w') as file:
2     file.write('Hello, Python!\n')
3     file.write('This is a new line.')
```

File Modes in Python

- 'r' – Read mode (default).
- 'w' – Write mode (overwrites file).

- 'a' – Append mode.
- 'rb' – Read binary mode.
- 'wb' – Write binary mode.

Using the with Statement

The `with` statement simplifies file handling by automatically closing the file when the block is done.

Example:

Using the with Statement

```
1 with open('data.txt', 'r') as file:  
2     data = file.read()  
3     print(data)
```

Summary: File I/O in Python is straightforward and efficient, with built-in methods that handle files securely and reliably.

1.6.3 Common Python Libraries: os, sys, math, datetime, and json

Python's standard library provides a rich set of modules for everyday tasks. This section covers some of the most commonly used libraries.

os – Operating System Interface

The `os` module provides functions for interacting with the operating system, such as handling files, directories, and environment variables.

Example:

Using the os Module

```
1 import os  
2  
3 print(os.getcwd()) # Get current working directory  
4 os.mkdir('new_folder') # Create a new folder  
5 os.remove('file.txt') # Delete a file
```

sys – System-Specific Parameters

The `sys` module provides access to system-specific parameters and functions, such as command-line arguments and exiting the program.

Example:

Using the sys Module

```
1 import sys
2
3 print(sys.argv) # Command-line arguments
4 sys.exit(0) # Exit the program
```

math – Mathematical Functions

The `math` module offers mathematical functions such as trigonometry, logarithms, and factorials.

Example:

Using the math Module

```
1 import math
2
3 print(math.sqrt(16)) # Square root
4 print(math.pi) # Value of pi
5 print(math.factorial(5)) # Factorial of 5
```

datetime – Working with Dates and Times

The `datetime` module provides classes for working with dates and times, including formatting and arithmetic operations.

Example:

Using the datetime Module

```
1 from datetime import datetime
2
3 now = datetime.now()
4 print(now.strftime("%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S")) # Format current date and time
```

Dictionaries – Key-Value Data Structures

A dict in Python is an unordered collection of key-value pairs. Each key must be unique and immutable, and it maps to a corresponding value.

Example:

Using a Python Dictionary

```
1 data = {'name': 'Alice', 'age': 30}
2
3 print(data['name']) # Access value by key
```

```

4 data['age'] = 31          # Update value
5 data['city'] = 'Paris'   # Add new key-value pair
6
7 print(data)

```

Summary: Dictionaries are a powerful and flexible way to store structured data, enabling quick access and modification using keys. They are one of Python's most important built-in data types.

json – JSON Data Handling

The json module allows you to parse JSON data from strings or files and convert Python objects to JSON format.

Example:

Using the json Module

```

1 import json
2
3 data = {'name': 'Alice', 'age': 30}
4 json_string = json.dumps(data) # Convert to JSON string
5 print(json.loads(json_string)) # Convert JSON string to Python object

```

Summary: These libraries provide essential functions for system interaction, mathematical computations, date/time manipulation, and data serialization, making them fundamental for Python development.

1.6.4 Python Classes: Earth System Modeling Example

To demonstrate object-oriented programming in a scientific context, we implement a simple Earth System Model in Python. This example shows how classes can structure complex models by representing different components of the Earth system.

Defining Earth System Components

We create a base class EarthSystemComponent and extend it for each component like Atmosphere, Ocean, and Land. This can be found in code-ch01-sec06-earth-system-simulation.py.

Defining Earth System Components

```

1 class EarthSystemComponent:
2     def __init__(self, name):
3         self.name = name
4
5     def simulate(self):

```

```

6         raise NotImplementedError("This method should be implemented by subclasses
")
7
8 class Atmosphere(EarthSystemComponent):
9     def simulate(self):
10        return f"Simulating {self.name}: Temperature, pressure, and wind patterns"
11
12 class Ocean(EarthSystemComponent):
13     def simulate(self):
14        return f"Simulating {self.name}: Currents, salinity, and sea surface
temperatures"
15
16 class Land(EarthSystemComponent):
17     def simulate(self):
18        return f"Simulating {self.name}: Soil moisture, vegetation, and surface
temperature"

```

Building the Earth System Model

A main class `EarthSystemModel` is created to manage all components and run the simulation.

Earth System Model Class

```

1 class EarthSystemModel:
2     def __init__(self):
3         self.components = []
4
5     def add_component(self, component):
6         self.components.append(component)
7
8     def run_simulation(self):
9         for component in self.components:
10            print(component.simulate())

```

Running the Simulation

We instantiate the components, add them to the model, and run the simulation:

Running the Earth System Simulation

```

1 atmosphere = Atmosphere("Global Atmosphere")
2 ocean = Ocean("Global Ocean")
3 land = Land("Global Land")
4
5 model = EarthSystemModel()
6 model.add_component(atmosphere)

```

```
7 model.add_component(ocean)
8 model.add_component(land)
9
10 model.run_simulation()
```

Output:

Simulating Global Atmosphere: Temperature, pressure, and wind patterns

Simulating Global Ocean: Currents, salinity, and sea surface temperatures

Simulating Global Land: Soil moisture, vegetation, and surface temperature

This example showcases the power of OOP for complex systems, providing modularity, reusability, and clear organization in scientific models.

Chapter 2

Jupyter Notebooks, APIs and Servers

2.1 Introduction to Jupyter Notebooks

2.1.1 What is Jupyter Notebook?

Jupyter Notebook is an open-source web-based tool that allows you to create and share documents containing live code, equations, visualizations, and explanatory text. It supports various programming languages, including Python, making it an essential tool for data analysis, machine learning, and scientific computing. Its interactive nature allows for rapid prototyping, testing, and visualization of code, making it particularly useful for beginners and experts alike.

2.1.2 Installing and Running Jupyter

To install Jupyter Notebook, use Python's package manager, pip:

Install Jupyter Notebook

```
1 pip install jupyter  
2 pip install jupyterlab
```

Once installed, you can start Jupyter Notebook by running the following command in your terminal:

Run Jupyter Notebook

```
1 jupyter notebook
```

or `jupyter notebook mynotebook.ipynb`. This will open a web browser with the Jupyter interface, allowing you to create and manage notebooks. On many clouds there is jupyter pre-installed with many packages which you might want to use.

As an example, Amazon Web Services (AWS) for example offers a ready-to-go machine learning framework where you get all packages for using pytorch from the beginning. However, running any of these will cost you per hour - do not forget to shut it down once you are done, otherwise

you might be surprised how small amounts of payments can accumulate over days and weeks (happened to me once).

2.1.3 Basic Operations in Jupyter

In Jupyter, each notebook consists of cells that can hold code, text, or markdown. Common operations include:

- **Running Code:** Press Shift+Enter to execute the code in the current cell and move to the next.
- **Adding Cells:** Use the + button or press B to add a cell below the current one.
- **Changing Cell Type:** Switch between Code and Markdown using the dropdown or press Esc + M.
- **Saving Notebooks:** Press Ctrl+S or use the Save button to save your work.
- **Export as Code:** You can export a Jupyter Notebook to a Python code file by selecting File > Download as > Python (.py) in the Jupyter interface, or by running the command jupyter nbconvert --to script notebook.ipynb in the terminal.

Jupyter also provides built-in visualization support with libraries like matplotlib, making it ideal for data-driven projects. Its flexibility and ease of use make it a crucial tool for Python developers.

2.1.4 Installing Packages in Jupyter Notebooks with !pip install

In Jupyter Notebooks, you can install Python packages directly from within a code cell using the exclamation mark (!) followed by the usual pip install command. This is particularly useful because it eliminates the need to switch to a terminal or command line interface. The packages go into the virtual environment you have been using to call jupyter.

To install a package, simply run:

Installing a Package in Jupyter

```
1 !pip install numpy
```

This command installs the numpy package in your current Jupyter environment.

Why use !pip install in Jupyter?

- It ensures that the package is installed directly into the environment where the notebook is running.
- Convenient for interactive development without leaving the notebook interface.

If you encounter issues where Jupyter uses a different Python environment than your terminal, you can explicitly install packages to the notebook's Python environment by using:

Ensuring Correct Environment

```
1 import sys
2 !{sys.executable} -m pip install package_name
```

where

```
print({sys.executable})
```

shows the path of the current python binary used for execution, i.e.

```
{'C:\\\\Users\\\\rolan\\\\all\\\\ropy312\\\\Scripts\\\\python.exe'}
```

on my windows computer.

This guarantees that pip installs the package into the environment running the notebook, ensuring compatibility and avoiding common environment issues.

2.1.5 Running Jupyter on a Remote Linux Machine with Port Forwarding

When working on remote servers, such as a Linux machine over SSH, you can still use Jupyter Notebooks by starting it on the remote machine and forwarding the port to your local machine (Windows or Linux). This ensures you can access the notebook in your local browser while running the code on the powerful remote server.

Starting Jupyter on the Remote Linux Machine

First, log in to your remote Linux machine via SSH. Then, start Jupyter Notebook with:

Remote Command on Linux

```
1 jupyter notebook --no-browser --port=8888
```

This command starts Jupyter on port 8888 without opening a browser window on the remote machine.

Port Forwarding from Local Machine

To access this remote Jupyter server, you need to forward the port from the remote machine to your local machine. On a local Linux machine (using Bash) or Windows (Powershell):

Port Forwarding on Linux

```
1 ssh -N -L 9001:localhost:8888 user@remote-server-ip &
```

This forwards the remote port 8888 to your local machine's port 9001.

Accessing Jupyter Notebook in Your Local Browser

Once the SSH connection is established, open a browser on your local machine and navigate to:

`http://localhost:9001`

You will see the Jupyter Notebook interface running on the remote machine, accessible from your local browser. However, it will probably ask you for the token, which is displayed when you start the Jupyter notebook:

```
To access the server, open this file in a browser:  
file:///home/roland/.local/share/jupyter/runtime/jpserver-6745-open.html  
Or copy and paste one of these URLs:  
http://localhost:8888/tree?token=2bfafad00bd642b4fc56a57864e3e9ca92bc41e49f4c1f6  
http://127.0.0.1:8888/tree?token=2bfafad00bd642b4fc56a57864e3e9ca92bc41e49f4c1f6
```

The port 8888, however, is on the remote machine, you have forwarded it locally to 9001 and need to replace this, then use your browser to access the Jupyter notebook.

2.1.6 Using Markdown Cells for Documentation

Markdown cells in Jupyter Notebooks allow you to add formatted text, making your notebooks more readable and well-documented. To create a Markdown cell, simply change the cell type from Code to Markdown.

Markdown supports:

- **Headings:** Use # for headings (# Heading 1, ## Heading 2).
- **Bold and Italics:** Use **bold** or *italic*.
- **Lists:** Create ordered lists with numbers and unordered lists with dashes.
- **Links and Images:** Add links with [text](url) and images with ![alt text](image_url).
- **LaTeX Equations:** For mathematical expressions, enclose LaTeX code in \$...\$ for inline equations or \$\$...\$\$ for display equations.

Markdown transforms Jupyter notebooks into interactive documents combining code, text, and visuals seamlessly.

2.1.7 Using Magic Commands in Jupyter Notebooks

Jupyter provides special **magic commands** that simplify various tasks such as timing code execution, managing the environment, and more. Magic commands start with a single % for line magics and %% for cell magics.

Common Magic Commands:

- %time: Times the execution of a single line of code.

Timing a Code Line

```
1 %time sum(range(1000000))
```

- `%timeit`: Runs code multiple times and gives an average runtime.
- `%lsmagic`: Lists all available magic commands.
- `%%writefile`: Writes the contents of a cell to an external file.

Writing to a File

```
1 %%writefile magic_hello.py
2 print("Hello, world!")
```

- `%%bash`: Runs Bash commands directly inside a Jupyter cell.

Magic commands enhance productivity by providing quick, built-in operations within Jupyter.

2.1.8 Running Shell Commands in Jupyter Notebooks

Jupyter allows you to execute shell commands directly within code cells using the exclamation mark (!). This is useful for interacting with the operating system without leaving the notebook.

Examples of Shell Commands in Jupyter:

- List files in the current directory:

List Files

```
1 !ls
```

- Install packages using pip:

Install a Package

```
1 !pip install numpy
```

- Check the Python version:

Check Python Version

```
1 !python --version
```

Shell commands allow seamless interaction with the system, making Jupyter highly versatile for both coding and administrative tasks.

2.1.9 Data Visualization in Jupyter with Matplotlib, Seaborn, and Plotly

Jupyter Notebooks integrate well with popular Python visualization libraries, making it easy to create plots and graphs directly within your notebook.

Lorenz63 Calculation and Visualization

```

1 import numpy as np
2 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
3
4 # Parameters and initial condition
5 sigma, beta, rho = 10, 8/3, 28
6 dt, steps = 0.01, 10000
7 xyz = np.empty((steps, 3))
8 xyz[0] = (1, 1, 1)
9
10 # Integration using Euler method
11 for i in range(steps - 1):
12     x, y, z = xyz[i]
13     dx = sigma * (y - x)
14     dy = x * (rho - z) - y
15     dz = x * y - beta * z
16     xyz[i + 1] = xyz[i] + dt * np.array([dx, dy, dz])
17
18 # Plot the result
19 fig = plt.figure(figsize=(6, 4))
20 ax = fig.add_subplot(projection='3d')
21 ax.plot(*xyz.T, lw=0.5)
22 ax.set_title("Lorenz Attractor")
23 ax.set_facecolor("white")      # plot area (axes background)
24 plt.savefig('images/lorenz63.png')
25 plt.show()

```

And another code based on the seaborn package, where you need to pip install seaborn first, then run:

lorenz63-seaborn.py

```

1 import numpy as np
2 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
3 import seaborn as sns
4
5 # Parameters for the Lorenz system
6 s = 10.0    # Sigma
7 r = 28.0    # Rho
8 b = 8.0 / 3.0  # Beta
9
10 # Time step and number of iterations

```

Lorenz Attractor

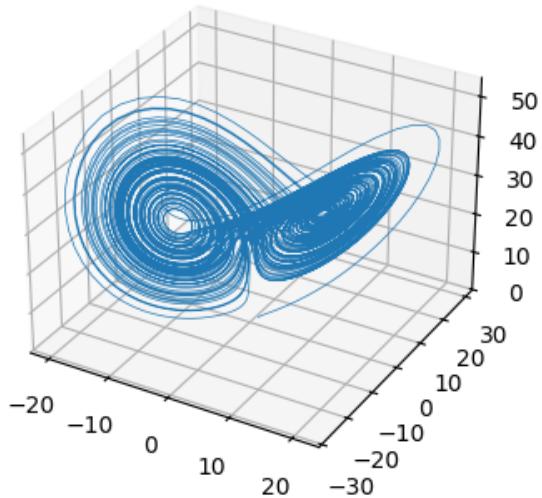


Figure 2.1: Matplotlib within Jupyter, Lorenz 63 Attractor.

```
11 dt, N = 0.01, 10000
12
13 # Array to hold x, y, z
14 xyz = np.zeros((N, 3))
15 xyz[0] = 1, 1, 1 # Initial condition
16
17 # Integrate using Euler's method
18 for i in range(1, N):
19     x, y, z = xyz[i-1]
20     dx = s * (y - x)
21     dy = x * (r - z) - y
22     dz = x * y - b * z
23     xyz[i] = x + dt * dx, y + dt * dy, z + dt * dz
24
25 # KDE plot with seaborn
26 sns.set(style="white")
27 plt.figure(figsize=(6, 5))
28 kde = sns.kdeplot(
29     x=xyz[:, 0], y=xyz[:, 2], # x vs z
30     fill=True, cmap="viridis", levels=100, thresh=0.02
31 )
32 plt.colorbar(kde.collections[0], label="Density")
33 plt.title("Lorenz Attractor Density (x vs z)")
34 plt.xlabel("x")
35 plt.ylabel("z")
36 plt.tight_layout()
```

```
37 plt.savefig("images/lorenz63-seaborn.png")
38 plt.show()
```

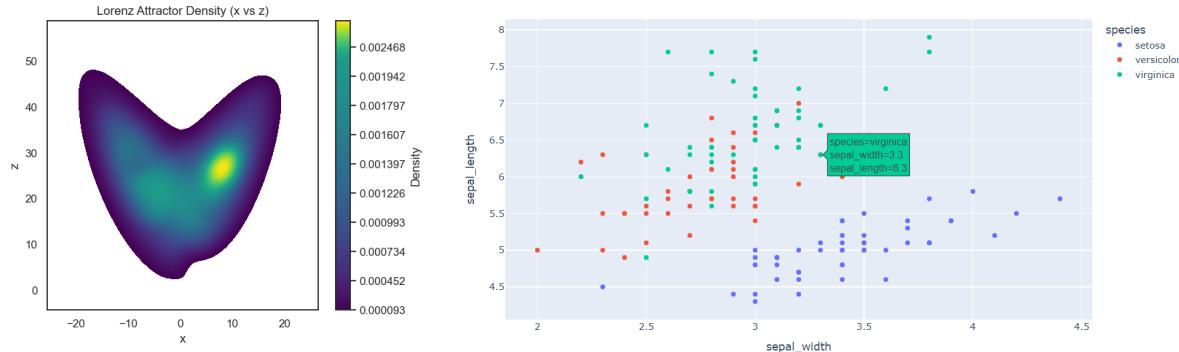


Figure 2.2: Density visualization based on seaborn package and interactive plotly visualization.

Interactive plots can easily be integrated into jupyter notebooks, here for example with the *plotly* package. You need to install

```
pip install numpy
pip install plotly
pip install pandas
```

We will discuss pandas further in a later session.

Using plotly for Interactive Plots:

Plotly Example

```
1 import plotly.express as px
2 df = px.data.iris()
3 fig = px.scatter(df, x='sepal_width', y='sepal_length', color='species')
4 fig.show()
```

With these and further libraries, Jupyter becomes a powerful tool for both static and interactive data visualizations. You cannot develop applications in artificial intelligence without looking at data and results in a very careful way, bringing in a lot of domain specific know-how!

Recommendation

Fluency in using Jupyter Notebooks is essential for effective Python development.

2.2 Introduction to APIs: A Key Principle in Code Development

Python is more than a programming language. It is an eco system which provides a lot of functionality which is needed for either AI/ML applications or other types of user services. In particular, APIs are extremely useful and, today, ubiquitous in scientific applications.

An **API (Application Programming Interface)** is a defined set of rules and tools that allows different pieces of software to communicate with each other. APIs are essential in modern programming because they enable modular, reusable, and maintainable code. From simple functions within a local Python module to complex web-based services, APIs provide a structured way to access and share functionality.

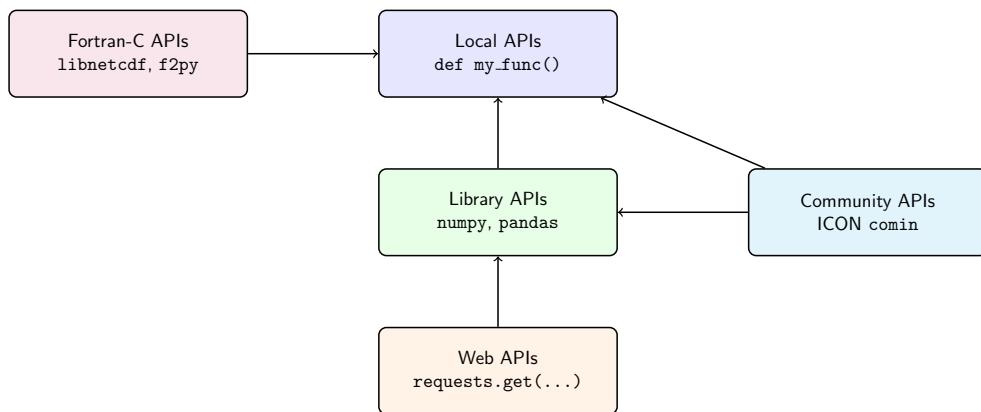


Figure 2.3: Importance of API design and functionality.

APIs work by exposing specific methods or endpoints that other code can call. For example, a Python module can expose a function like `add(a, b)`, or a web service can expose an HTTP endpoint like `/weather?city=Berlin`. In both cases, the underlying logic is hidden, and only the necessary interface is visible. This separation is crucial for code maintenance and scalability.

2.2.1 Why Learn APIs from the Beginning?

APIs are not just an advanced tool but a **fundamental principle of code development** that should be learned from the start. Here's why:

- **Modularity:** APIs encourage splitting code into independent modules, making it easier to test, maintain, and extend.
- **Reusability:** Functions and classes defined in one project can be reused across different projects through APIs.
- **Collaboration:** APIs allow teams to work on different components simultaneously, with clearly defined interfaces.
- **Abstraction:** Details are hidden behind the API, exposing only what is necessary, which helps avoid unnecessary complexity.
- **Scalability:** As projects grow, APIs provide a stable way to integrate new features without breaking existing code.

APIs are **everywhere in Python development**, from the built-in functions of the standard library to external packages like numpy or pandas. When working with data, machine learning models, or even complex weather systems, APIs help organize the code logically and efficiently.

We use APIs in many places for AI/ML development. It is there for data provision. It defines the connection between **user interfaces**, the **server** managing user requests, the **large language model** providing an intelligent service, the **function calls** which link specific functionality into the user-service interaction.

2.2.2 Types of APIs in Python

APIs in Python can take various forms:

- **Local APIs:** A set of functions or classes within a Python module that can be imported and used in other scripts.
- **Library APIs:** External libraries like numpy or pandas expose APIs that developers use for numerical operations or data manipulation.
- **Web APIs:** Services like OpenWeatherMap or PokeAPI provide data over HTTP, which Python can access using tools like requests.

2.2.3 APIs as a Structuring Principle for Code Development

From the beginning of your Python learning journey, understanding and using APIs helps build **structured, maintainable, and scalable code**. APIs force developers to think about clear interfaces, modular design, and reusability, which are essential practices in any project, large or small.

In this tutorial, we will explore both local and web APIs, demonstrating how to create and consume APIs to build powerful and efficient Python applications.

2.3 Making API Requests with requests

In modern software development, REST APIs have become a standard method for enabling communication between distributed components. The API we developed in `code011_REST.py` uses the Flask framework to expose endpoints that allow operations such as creating, reading, updating, and deleting items. This design follows the REST principles by ensuring a stateless, client–server interaction with a clear separation of concerns. On the server side, we define endpoints like `/items` for retrieving or adding items, and `/items/<id>` for working with individual items.

The client implementation, found in `code012_REST_client.py`, leverages the Python `requests` library to interact with these endpoints. This library abstracts the details of HTTP communication and provides simple functions for GET, POST, PUT, and DELETE requests. By using `requests`, developers can focus on the application logic rather than on low-level network details.

Setting Up the Server:

In code011_REST.py, the Flask server is set up to listen on a local port (usually 5000). The code defines several endpoints:

- **GET /items**: Returns the entire collection of items as JSON.
- **GET /items/<id>**: Retrieves a specific item by its identifier.
- **POST /items**: Accepts JSON data to create a new item. The new item's identifier is generated automatically and also allows client-specified IDs.
- **PUT /items/<id>**: Updates an existing item.
- **DELETE /items/<id>**: Removes an item from the collection.
- **POST /items/<id>/upload**: Uploads a file associated with an item. The server saves the file in a designated uploads directory and records the file path in the item's data.
- **GET /items/<id>/download**: Downloads the file associated with an item. The server retrieves the stored file and sends it as an attachment, allowing the client to save it with its original filename.

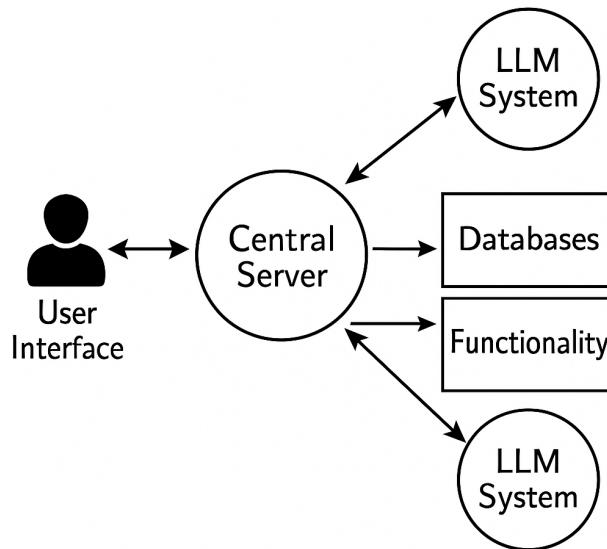


Figure 2.4: How APIs are crucial for AI/ML applications involving large language models (LLM) with user services. The **user interface** interacts with the **central server** through an API. The server uses APIs to talk to the **LLMs**. It uses APIs for **database requests** (including the user and rights management, but also to pull observations, fields, analyses and much more. It also interacts with specific **functionality** providing **weather and climate services**, including sophisticated AI/ML applications, through further APIs.

We have the full server code as demo application in the file `flask_server_request_api.py`. Here, we explain its components:

Server Setup. We start by importing necessary modules and creating the Flask app instance.

Setup

```
1 from flask import Flask, jsonify, request, abort, send_from_directory
2 from werkzeug.utils import secure_filename
3 import os
4
5 app = Flask(__name__)
```

Upload Folder and Allowed Extensions. Define the upload folder and allowed file types.

Upload Configuration

```
1 UPLOAD_FOLDER = 'uploads'
2 ALLOWED_EXTENSIONS = {'txt', 'pdf', 'png', 'jpg', 'jpeg', 'gif'}
3
4 if not os.path.exists(UPLOAD_FOLDER):
5     os.makedirs(UPLOAD_FOLDER)
6
7 def allowed_file(filename):
8     return '.' in filename and \
9         filename.rsplit('.', 1)[1].lower() in ALLOWED_EXTENSIONS
```

In-Memory Item List. A simple list of items simulates a database.

Initial Items

```
1 items = [
2     {"id": 1, "name": "Item 1"},
3     {"id": 2, "name": "Item 2"},
4 ]
```

GET /items. Return all items.

GET /items

```
1 @app.route('/items', methods=['GET'])
2 def get_items():
3     return jsonify(items)
```

GET /items/<id>. Return a single item by ID.

GET /items/<id>

```
1 @app.route('/items/<int:item_id>', methods=['GET'])
2 def get_item(item_id):
3     item = next((item for item in items if item['id'] == item_id), None)
```

```

4     if item is None:
5         abort(404)
6     return jsonify(item)

```

POST /items. Add a new item.

POST /items

```

1 @app.route('/items', methods=['POST'])
2 def create_item():
3     if not request.json or 'name' not in request.json:
4         abort(400)
5     new_item = {
6         "id": items[-1]["id"] + 1 if items else 1,
7         "name": request.json['name']
8     }
9     items.append(new_item)
10    return jsonify(new_item), 201

```

PUT /items/<id>. Update or create an item by ID.

PUT /items/<id>

```

1 @app.route('/items/<int:item_id>', methods=['PUT'])
2 def update_or_create_item(item_id):
3     if not request.json or 'name' not in request.json:
4         abort(400)
5     item = next((item for item in items if item['id'] == item_id), None)
6     if item is None:
7         new_item = {"id": item_id, "name": request.json['name']}
8         items.append(new_item)
9         return jsonify(new_item), 201
10    else:
11        item['name'] = request.json.get('name', item['name'])
12        return jsonify(item)

```

DELETE /items/<id>. Delete an item.

DELETE /items/<id>

```

1 @app.route('/items/<int:item_id>', methods=['DELETE'])
2 def delete_item(item_id):
3     global items
4     items = [item for item in items if item['id'] != item_id]
5     return jsonify({'result': True})

```

POST /items/<id>/upload. Upload a file for a specific item.

POST /items/<id>/upload

```

1 @app.route('/items/<int:item_id>/upload', methods=['POST'])
2 def upload_file(item_id):
3     item = next((item for item in items if item['id'] == item_id), None)
4     if item is None:
5         abort(404)
6     if 'file' not in request.files:
7         abort(400, description="No file part in the request")
8     file = request.files['file']
9     if file.filename == '':
10        abort(400, description="No selected file")
11    if file and allowed_file(file.filename):
12        filename = secure_filename(file.filename)
13        saved_filename = f"{item_id}_{filename}"
14        file_path = os.path.join(UPLOAD_FOLDER, saved_filename)
15        file.save(file_path)
16        item['file'] = file_path
17    return jsonify({'result': 'File uploaded', 'file_path': file_path}), 201
18 else:
19     abort(400, description="File type not allowed")

```

GET /items/<id>/download. Download a file attached to an item.

GET /items/<id>/download

```

1 @app.route('/items/<int:item_id>/download', methods=['GET'])
2 def download_file(item_id):
3     item = next((item for item in items if item['id'] == item_id), None)
4     if item is None or 'file' not in item:
5         abort(404)
6     file_path = item['file']
7     directory, filename = os.path.split(file_path)
8     return send_from_directory(directory, filename, as_attachment=True)

```

Start the Server. Run the application in debug mode.

Run Server

```

1 if __name__ == '__main__':
2     app.run(debug=True)

```

This server code, which you can view in detail in flask_server_request_api.py, serves as the API's backend. The careful design ensures that the API is both stateless and uniform, allowing clients to interact predictably with the service.

Interacting with the API Using requests:

On the client side, code012_REST_client.py demonstrates how to use the requests library to make calls to our API. Let's consider a few typical examples:

1. Retrieving All Items:

A simple GET request is used to fetch the list of items. The client code sends:

```
response = requests.get('http://127.0.0.1:5000/items')
print(response.json())
```

This call returns a JSON array containing all items. By decoding the response, the client can easily process and display the data.

2. Retrieving a Specific Item:

To fetch an individual item, the client sends a GET request with the item's ID in the URL:

```
response = requests.get('http://127.0.0.1:5000/items/1')
print(response.json())
```

If the item exists, the server returns its details in JSON format; if not, an error (typically a 404 Not Found) is returned.

3. Adding a New Item:

The POST request is used to create a new item. In our implementation, the client sends a JSON payload:

```
new_item = {'name': 'New Item'}
response = requests.post('http://127.0.0.1:5000/items', json=new_item)
print(response.json())
```

The server then generates a new item with a unique ID and returns it. Notice that the `json=` parameter in the request call makes it easy to send JSON data without manual serialization.

4. Updating and Deleting Items:

Similarly, PUT requests are used to update an item and DELETE requests to remove it. The corresponding code in `code012_REST_client.py` handles these actions by specifying the correct URL endpoints and sending appropriate JSON data if necessary.

5. Upload Functionality:

In addition to updating and deleting items, the REST API example demonstrates file uploads. Clients can attach files to specific items by sending a POST request to an endpoint such as `/items/<id>/upload`. This endpoint accepts multipart form-data where the file is provided under a designated field (e.g., `'file'`). On the server side, Flask processes the incoming file, ensures its name is secured using `secure_filename`, and then saves it into a dedicated `uploads` directory. The file path is subsequently stored in the item's record, associating the file with the item. This approach enables users to easily manage additional resources related to each item.

6. Download Functionality:

Complementing the upload feature, the API also provides a download endpoint at `/items/<id>/download`. When a client sends a GET request to this endpoint, the server

locates the file associated with the item and transmits it back as an attachment using Flask's send_from_directory function. This not only ensures that the file is delivered with the correct MIME type but also prompts the client's browser to download it rather than display it inline. On the client side, the downloaded file can be saved with its original name by removing any item-specific prefixes that were added during upload, thus preserving the original filename. This integrated upload and download mechanism enhances the functionality of the REST API by allowing it to handle both data and associated file resources seamlessly.

```
1 import requests
2
3 # Base URL of the API
4 base_url = 'http://127.0.0.1:5000'
5
6 # GET all items
7 response = requests.get(f'{base_url}/items')
8 print("GET /items:", response.json())
9
10 # GET a specific item (e.g., id = 1)
11 response = requests.get(f'{base_url}/items/1')
12 print("GET /items/1:", response.json())
13
14 # POST a new item
15 new_item = {'name': 'New Item'}
16 response = requests.post(f'{base_url}/items', json=new_item)
17 print("POST /items:", response.json())
18
19 # PUT to update an item (e.g., id = 1)
20 updated_item = {'name': 'Updated Item 1'}
21 response = requests.put(f'{base_url}/items/1', json=updated_item)
22 print("PUT /items/1:", response.json())
23
24 # DELETE an item (e.g., id = 1)
25 response = requests.delete(f'{base_url}/items/1')
26 print("DELETE /items/1:", response.json())
27
28 # Check items after deletion
29 response = requests.get(f'{base_url}/items')
30 print("GET /items after deletion:", response.json())
31
32 # -----
33 # UPLOAD a file for an item (e.g., for item with id = 2)
34 upload_url = f'{base_url}/items/2/upload'
35 # Ensure you have a file named 'example.txt' in your current directory
36 with open('example.txt', 'rb') as f:
37     files = {'file': f}
38     response = requests.post(upload_url, files=files)
39     print("POST /items/2/upload:", response.json())
40
```

```
41 # -----
42 # DOWNLOAD the file associated with an item (e.g., for item with id = 2)
43 download_url = f'{base_url}/items/2/download'
44 response = requests.get(download_url, stream=True)
45 if response.status_code == 200:
46     # Save the downloaded file locally
47     with open('downloaded_example.txt', 'wb') as f:
48         for chunk in response.iter_content(chunk_size=8192):
49             f.write(chunk)
50     print("File downloaded successfully and saved as downloaded_example.txt")
51 else:
52     print("Failed to download file, status code:", response.status_code)
```

Error Handling and Debugging:

A crucial aspect of making API requests is managing errors gracefully. The client code checks the HTTP status code returned by the server and handles error responses appropriately. For instance, if a GET request for an item returns a 404 status code, the client can notify the user that the requested item does not exist. Similarly, for POST and PUT requests, verifying that the server returns the expected 201 or 200 status code helps ensure that operations have completed successfully.

Benefits of This Approach:

Using the requests library to interact with our REST API provides several benefits:

- **Simplicity:** The requests library offers an intuitive API that abstracts the complexity of HTTP communication.
- **Flexibility:** Developers can easily extend the client to support additional endpoints or incorporate authentication mechanisms.
- **Maintainability:** By separating the server (code011_REST.py) and client (code012_REST_client.py) code, our architecture is modular. This makes it easier to update one component without affecting the other.
- **Reusability:** The external code inclusion method using \includeexternalcode promotes code reuse and ensures that our documentation is consistent with our source code.

It is now very easy to define simple functions such as `list()`, `up(<filename>, <id>)` or `down(<id>)` to list all uploaded items, to upload a particular file or to download a particular file.

In summary, making API requests with Python's requests library is both straightforward and powerful. Our implementation demonstrates a complete cycle: setting up a REST API server with Flask, handling standard HTTP methods, and interacting with the API via a client script. The combination of clear server endpoints, robust client-side error handling, and modular code inclusion makes this approach a solid foundation for building scalable and maintainable web services.

By following these practices, you can build reliable applications that communicate over HTTP in a standardized way, ultimately leading to more effective and efficient software systems.

Recommendation

An API-centric mindset greatly enhances fast development, modular design, and clean separation of responsibilities.

2.4 Fortran Integration using ctypes as API

In this section, we illustrate an approach to integrating FORTRAN code with Python by using the `ctypes` module. The library `ctypes` provides explicit control over data types and memory management when interfacing with compiled shared libraries.

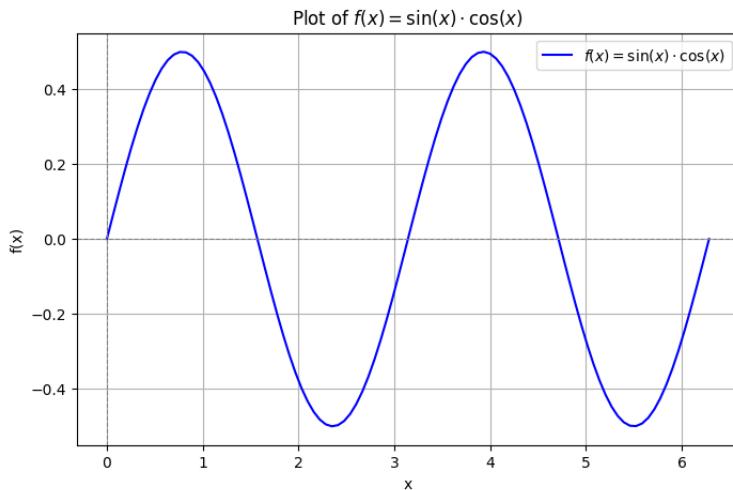


Figure 2.5: We use the Fortran `iso_c_binding` module to create a C-compatible API, allowing Fortran routines to be called from C or other languages such as Python via `ctypes` or `f2py`.

The following example demonstrates how to load a Fortran shared library (compiled as `fortran_interface.so`), define the function prototype for the Fortran function `f_sin_cos`, and compute the function $f(x) = \sin(x) \cdot \cos(x)$ for 100 values between 0 and 2π . The computed values are then plotted using Matplotlib. Additionally, the code checks for the existence of a Fortran debug log and prints its contents if available.

FORTRAN code example

```

1 %%writefile fortran_interface.f90
2 module fortran_module
3   use iso_c_binding, only: c_double
4   implicit none
5 contains
6   function f_sin_cos(x) result(f) bind(C, name="f_sin_cos")
7     implicit none
8     real(c_double), intent(in) :: x

```

```
9      real(c_double) :: f
10     f = sin(x) * cos(x)
11   end function f_sin_cos
12 end module fortran_module
```

Compile this based on gfortran.

Compilation

```
1 gfortran -shared -fPIC fortran_interface.f90 -o fortran_interface.so
```

Then, you might use the code, e.g. in a jupyter notebook or as basic python application.

It can be extremely helpful to make your fortran modules and functions available for execution in your python framework. We will pursue this further in upcoming parts of this tutorial.

Chapter 3

Eccodes for Grib, Opendata, NetCDF, Visualization

Meteorological data are often stored in GRIB or NetCDF formats, both of which are compact binary formats widely used in numerical weather prediction and climate analysis. While GRIB is the standard format for meteorological model outputs, NetCDF is more commonly used in the broader scientific community, particularly for observational datasets and climate research. Additionally, Zarr is an alternative format to NetCDF, optimized for cloud-based storage and parallel computing for machine learning applications. Recent developments allow storing NetCDF data in Zarr format for enhanced scalability.

In this chapter, we demonstrate how to work with both formats, focusing on GRIB data using the ECCODES library—provided by ECMWF—to decode and analyze meteorological data from the DWD Open Data Server, and working with NetCDF for further integration and analysis. We will cover the following steps:

- *Accessing and Downloading GRIB Data:* Retrieving ICON model GRIB files, including latitude-longitude fields and the 2-m temperature field, from the DWD Open Data Server.
- *Inspecting GRIB File Metadata:* Listing GRIB file keys, understanding metadata, and summarizing the available parameters and levels.
- *Loading and Visualizing GRIB Data:* Extracting numerical fields, mapping the spatial coordinates, and plotting meteorological variables using visualization tools.

In addition, we introduce NetCDF as a fundamental format for meteorological and climate data, covering the following aspects:

- *Accessing and Managing NetCDF Data:* Understanding the structure of NetCDF files, reading data, and managing metadata.
- *Working with NetCDF Data:* Processing and analyzing NetCDF datasets in the context of meteorological applications.
- *Visualizing NetCDF Data:* Plotting and interpreting NetCDF data using scientific computing tools.

By following these steps, we will gain a complete workflow for handling ICON model GRIB and NetCDF files, from downloading and inspection to visualization and analysis for scientific applications.

3.1 Downloading ICON Model GRIB Files from DWD Open Data Server

To analyze meteorological data using the ICON model, we need to download the required GRIB files from the *DWD Open Data Server*. These include the *2-meter temperature field* (icon_t2m.grib), the *latitude grid* (icon_lat.grib), and the *longitude grid* (icon_lon.grib). DWD provides these files in compressed GRIB2 format (.grib2.bz2), which must be downloaded and extracted before further processing.

Downloading the 2-Meter Temperature Field.

The following script constructs the filename for the *latest 2m temperature GRIB file* based on the current UTC date, downloads it using wget, and extracts it.

```
Downloading 2m Temperature Data

1 import datetime
2 import os
3 import wget
4 import bz2
5
6 # Construct the filename based on the current UTC date
7 now = datetime.datetime.now(datetime.UTC)
8 filename = f"icon_global_icosahedral_single-level_{now:%Y%m%d}00_000_T_2M.grib2.
9     bz2"
10 print("Constructed filename:", filename)
11
12 # Define the base URL
13 base_url = "https://opendata.dwd.de/weather/nwp/icon/grib/00/t_2m/"
14 url = base_url + filename
15 print("Download URL:", url)
16
17 # Download the .bz2 file using Python wget
18 wget.download(url, filename)
19 print(f"\nDownloaded {filename}")
20
21 # Decompress the .bz2 file using bz2 module
22 with bz2.open(filename, 'rb') as f_in, open(filename[:-4], 'wb') as f_out:
23     f_out.write(f_in.read())
24 print(f"Decompressed {filename} to {filename[:-4]}")
25
26 grib_filename = filename[:-4]
27 final_filename = "icon_t2m.grib"
28 os.rename(grib_filename, final_filename)
29 print(f"Renamed {grib_filename} to {final_filename}")
```

This script ensures that the latest available *2m temperature* field will be automatically retrieved and prepared for use.

Downloading Latitude and Longitude Data.

The latitude (icon_lat.grib) and longitude (icon_lon.grib) grids are *time-invariant* and must be downloaded separately. The script below identifies the latest available version on the DWD server, downloads both files, and renames them for easier access. The following script is contained in the file icon_grid_get.py as well as in the jupyter notebook to catch forecasts from the DWD open data server.

Downloading ICON Latitude and Longitude GRIB Data

```

1 import re
2 import os
3 import bz2
4 import requests
5 import wget
6
7 base_url = "https://opendata.dwd.de/weather/nwp/icon/grib/00/"
8 clat_path = "clat/"
9 clon_path = "clon/"
10
11 # Function to find the latest available timestamp from DWD server
12 def get_latest_timestamp(path):
13     listing_url = base_url + path
14     response = requests.get(listing_url)
15     if response.status_code != 200:
16         raise RuntimeError(f"Could not fetch listing: {listing_url}")
17     timestamps = re.findall(
18         r'icon_global_icosahedral_time-invariant_(\d{10})_CLAT\.grib2\.bz2',
19         response.text
20     )
21     return max(timestamps) if timestamps else None
22
23 # Get the latest available timestamp
24 timestamp = get_latest_timestamp(clat_path)
25 if not timestamp:
26     raise RuntimeError("Could not determine latest timestamp from DWD server.")
27
28 files = {
29     "clat": f"clat/icon_global_icosahedral_time-invariant_{timestamp}_CLAT.grib2.
30             bz2",
31     "clon": f"clon/icon_global_icosahedral_time-invariant_{timestamp}_CLON.grib2.
32             bz2"
33 }
34
35 rename_map = {"clat": "icon_lat.grib", "clon": "icon_lon.grib"}
36
37 for key, path in files.items():
38     filename = os.path.basename(path)

```

```

37     url = base_url + path
38
39     print(f"Downloading {url} ...")
40     wget.download(url, filename)
41     print(f"\nDownloaded {filename}")
42
43     # Uncompress the .bz2 file
44     with bz2.open(filename, 'rb') as compressed, open(filename[:-4], 'wb') as
45         out_file:
46             out_file.write(compressed.read())
47             print(f"Decompressed {filename} to {filename[:-4]}")
48
49     # Rename the extracted file
50     extracted_filename = filename[:-4] # Remove .bz2
51     new_filename = rename_map[key]
52     os.rename(extracted_filename, new_filename)
53     print(f"Renamed {extracted_filename} to {new_filename}")

```

This script identifies the *latest available latitude and longitude files* on the DWD server, downloads them using wget, extracts the .bz2 compressed files, and renames them to icon_lat.grib and icon_lon.grib for easy reference.

After executing these scripts, we have all necessary *spatial coordinate data and temperature fields* to proceed with further analysis and visualization.

3.2 The Grib Library eccodes

We have discussed the download of grib data, here we now assume that we have icon lat and lon coordinates in files icon_lat.grib and icon_lon.grib.

ecCodes is a library developed by ECMWF for decoding and encoding GRIB (GRIdded Binary) files. It provides a Python interface to inspect and manipulate meteorological data stored in the GRIB format.

Installing ecCodes. Installing ecCodes, the ECMWF library for GRIB file handling, can be challenging due to dependencies and system configurations. Here is a summary of the installation process:

System Dependencies: Ensure required system libraries are installed:

```
sudo apt update && sudo apt install libeccodes-dev eccodes
```

On macOS, use Homebrew:

```
brew install eccodes
```

Python Package: Install the Python bindings with:

```
pip install eccodes
```

Recommendation

Using ECCODES on Windows should be done via windows subsystem for linux or through a docker container.

On Windows, you should use the **WSL** (Windows Subsystem for Linux). Here, you can do the same install commands

```
sudo apt update
sudo apt install eccodes
sudo apt install libeccodes-tools
```

Test it with

```
grib_ls -V
```

Setting Environment Variables: If the library is not found, define the paths manually:

```
export ECCODES_DEFINITION_PATH=/usr/share/eccodes/definitions
export ECCODES_SAMPLES_PATH=/usr/share/eccodes/samples
```

Adjust these paths according to your system setup.

Verifying Installation: Check if ecCodes is working correctly:

```
grib_ls --help
python -c "import eccodes; print(eccodes.codes_get_api_version())"
```

If these commands return valid output, the installation is successful.

Handling DWD-Specific Definitions: If working with DWD GRIB files, additional definition files may be required. Download the latest version from:

```
https://opendata.dwd.de/weather/lib/grib/
```

We provide a script download_latest_grib_definition_dwd.py which will carry out the download and installation, but still needs you to take care of the path variables. Please check and make sure the definitions paths are set properly.

Checking if ecCodes is Installed Before using ecCodes, you can check if it is installed correctly with the following code:

Checking ecCodes Installation

```
1 try:
2     import eccodes
3     print("ecCodes is installed and working correctly.")
4 except ImportError:
5     print("ecCodes is not installed. Please install it using 'pip install eccodes'")
6     exit(1)
```

Inspecting Grib Files. We next demonstrate how to inspect the metadata keys and shortnames of GRIB files (icon_lat.grib and icon_lon.grib) using ecCodes.

Listing GRIB Keys. The function below extracts and lists metadata keys from a GRIB file:

Listing GRIB Keys

```

1 import eccodes
2
3 def list_grib_keys(grib_filename):
4     """Lists keys from a GRIB file while handling errors properly."""
5     try:
6         with open(grib_filename, 'rb') as f:
7             while True:
8                 gid = eccodes.codes_grib_new_from_file(f)
9                 if gid is None: # End of file
10                     break
11
12                 key_iterator = eccodes.codes_keys_iterator_new(gid)
13                 keys = []
14
15                 while eccodes.codes_keys_iterator_next(key_iterator):
16                     keyname = eccodes.codes_keys_iterator_get_name(key_iterator)
17                     if keyname not in ['section2Padding', 'codedValues', 'values']:
18                         try:
19                             value = eccodes.codes_get_string(gid, keyname)
20                         except Exception:
21                             value = "N/A"
22                         keys.append((keyname, value))
23
24                     eccodes.codes_release(gid)
25
26                     # Print all extracted keys
27                     for key, value in keys:
28                         print(f"Key: {key:40} Value: {value}")
29             except eccodes.CodesInternalError as e:
30                 print(f"ecCodes Error: {e}")
31
32 # Example usage
33 list_grib_keys("icon_lat.grib")

```

Output can be e.g.

Keys

1 Key: globalDomain	Value: g
2 Key: GRIBEditionNumber	Value: 2
3 Key: tablesVersionLatestOfficial	Value: 32
4 Key: tablesVersionLatest	Value: 32
5 Key: grib2divider	Value: 1e+06
6 Key: angleSubdivisions	Value: 1e+06
7 Key: missingValue	Value: 9999
8 Key: ieeeFloats	Value: 1

```
9 Key: isHindcast           Value: 0
10 ...
```

Listing Short Names from a GRIB File.

The function below extracts and lists short names along with their corresponding levels and sizes from a GRIB file:

Listing Short Names

```
1 import eccodes
2
3 def show_shortnames(grib_file):
4     """Lists short names, levels, and sizes from a GRIB file."""
5     with open(grib_file, 'rb') as f:
6         shortName_prev = ''
7         output = ''
8         level_prev = ''
9         count = 0
10        print('-' * 80)
11        print('File = ', grib_file)
12        print('\n{:<30}{:<16}{:>10}'.format('Short Name', 'Level', 'Size'))
13        print('-' * 80)
14        while True:
15            gid = eccodes.codes_grib_new_from_file(f)
16            if gid is None:
17                break
18            shortName = eccodes.codes_get(gid, "shortName")
19            level = eccodes.codes_get(gid, "level")
20            size1 = eccodes.codes_get_size(gid, "values")
21            if shortName_prev != shortName:
22                if level_prev != level and count > 0:
23                    output += f' - {level_prev}'
24                if count > 0:
25                    output += f', \t Size = {size1}'
26                output += '\n{:<30}{:<16}{:>10}'.format(shortName, level, size1)
27                shortName_prev = shortName
28                level_prev = level
29                count += 1
30            eccodes.codes_release(gid)
31        print(output)
32
33 # Example usage
34 show_shortnames("icon_lat.grib")
```

Output is something like e.g.

Shortnames, Levels, Size

```

1 -----
2 File = icon_lat.grib
3 Short Name           Level           Size
4 -----
5 tlat                 0               2949120

```

These functions allow users to inspect the GRIB file structure, understand available variables, and extract key metadata for further analysis.

Plotting Latitude and Longitude Data. To visualize the points stored in the GRIB files, we use matplotlib along with cartopy to overlay the scatter plot on a map:

Plotting Latitude and Longitude with a Map

```

1 import eccodes
2 import numpy as np
3 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
4 import cartopy.crs as ccrs
5 import cartopy.feature as cfeature
6
7 def plot_lat_lon(lat_file, lon_file):
8     """Plots latitude and longitude points from GRIB files on a map."""
9     def extract_values(grib_file):
10         with open(grib_file, 'rb') as f:
11             gid = eccodes.codes_grib_new_from_file(f)
12             values = eccodes.codes_get_array(gid, "values")
13             eccodes.codes_release(gid)
14         return values
15
16     latitudes = extract_values(lat_file)
17     longitudes = extract_values(lon_file)
18
19     plt.figure(figsize=(10, 5))
20     ax = plt.axes(projection=ccrs.PlateCarree())
21     ax.set_global()
22     ax.add_feature(cfeature.LAND, edgecolor='black')
23     ax.add_feature(cfeature.COASTLINE)
24     ax.add_feature(cfeature.BORDERS, linestyle=':')
25
26     plt.scatter(longitudes, latitudes, s=0.5, color='gray', transform=ccrs.
27                 PlateCarree())
28     plt.xlabel("Longitude")
29     plt.ylabel("Latitude")
30     plt.title("Scatter Plot of Latitude and Longitude on a Map")
31     plt.grid()
32     plt.savefig("icon_points_global.png", dpi=300, bbox_inches='tight')
33     plt.show()

```

```
34 # Example usage
35 plot_lat_lon("icon_lat.grib", "icon_lon.grib")
```

This function:

- Reads latitude and longitude values from GRIB files.
- Uses `matplotlib` and `cartopy` to overlay the points on a global map.
- Adds land, coastlines, and country borders for better visualization.

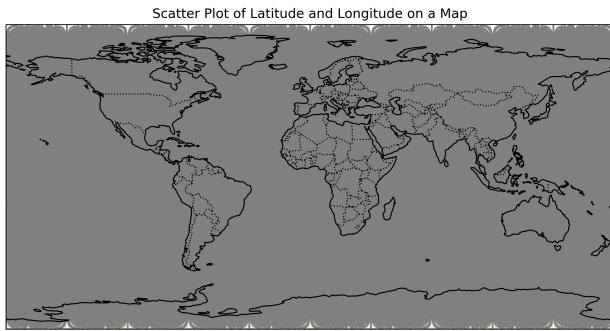


Figure 3.1: Global ICON grid points.

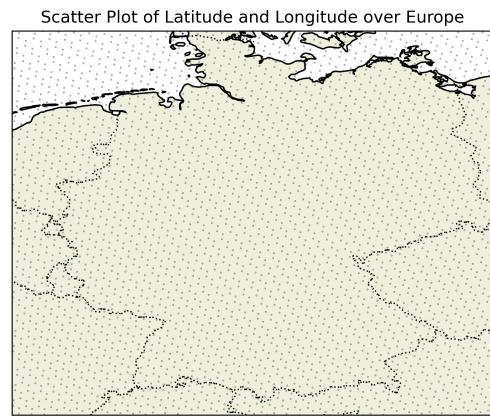


Figure 3.2: ICON grid points over Germany.

But the resolution is quite high, you cannot see much any more, everything is covered by points.

Zooming in Over Germany. To visualize the points stored in the GRIB files, we use `matplotlib` along with `cartopy` to overlay the scatter plot on a map:

Plotting Latitude and Longitude with a Map

```
1 import eccodes
2 import numpy as np
3 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
4 import cartopy.crs as ccrs
5 import cartopy.feature as cfeature
6
7 def plot_lat_lon_germany(lat_file, lon_file):
8     """Plots latitude and longitude points from GRIB files, zoomed in over Europe.
8     """
9     def extract_values(grib_file):
10         with open(grib_file, 'rb') as f:
11             gid = eccodes.codes_grib_new_from_file(f)
12             values = eccodes.codes_get_array(gid, "values")
13             eccodes.codes_release(gid)
14
15         return values
```

```

16     latitudes = extract_values(lat_file)
17     longitudes = extract_values(lon_file)
18
19     plt.figure(figsize=(10, 5))
20     ax = plt.axes(projection=ccrs.PlateCarree())
21     ax.set_extent([5, 15, 47, 55], crs=ccrs.PlateCarree()) # Europe zoom: [
22     lon_min, lon_max, lat_min, lat_max]
23     ax.add_feature(cfeature.LAND, edgecolor='black')
24     ax.add_feature(cfeature.COASTLINE)
25     ax.add_feature(cfeature.BORDERS, linestyle=':')
26
27     plt.scatter(longitudes, latitudes, s=0.1, color='blue', transform=ccrs.
28     PlateCarree())
29     plt.xlabel("Longitude")
30     plt.ylabel("Latitude")
31     plt.title("Scatter Plot of Latitude and Longitude over Europe")
32     plt.grid()
33     plt.savefig("icon_points_germany.png", dpi=300, bbox_inches='tight')
34     plt.show()
35
36 # Example usage
37 plot_lat_lon_germany("icon_lat.grib", "icon_lon.grib")

```

This function:

- Reads latitude and longitude values from GRIB files.
- Zooms into Europe with specific latitude/longitude boundaries.
- Uses matplotlib and cartopy to overlay the points on a regional map.
- Adjusts the point size to avoid excessive density.

Visualizing 2-Meter Temperature (T2M)

To visualize the 2-meter temperature field from GRIB data, we extract the temperature values alongside the previously loaded latitude and longitude coordinates. The relevant Python function for loading the T2M values is:

Loading T2M Data

```

1 import eccodes
2
3 def load_grib(file, var):
4     """Loads specified variable from GRIB file."""
5     with open(file, 'rb') as f:
6         while (gid := eccodes.codes_grib_new_from_file(f)) is not None:
7             if eccodes.codes_get(gid, "shortName") == var:
8                 vals = eccodes.codes_get_array(gid, "values")
9                 eccodes.codes_release(gid)
10                return vals

```

```

11         eccodes.codes_release(gid)
12     return None
13
14 # Load T2M data
15 t2m = load_grib("icon_t2m.grib", "2t")

```

Once the temperature values are obtained, they are visualized using `matplotlib` and `cartopy`, adapting the point size dynamically based on the bounding box size to maintain clarity across different zoom levels. The visualization function is given below:

Plotting T2M Data

```

1 import numpy as np
2 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
3 import cartopy.crs as ccrs
4 import cartopy.feature as cfeature
5
6 def plot_t2m(lat, lon, t2m, bbox, title, fname):
7     """Plots 2m temperature within bbox = (latmin, latmax, lonmin, lonmax)."""
8     latmin, latmax, lonmin, lonmax = bbox
9     mask = (lat >= latmin) & (lat <= latmax) & (lon >= lonmin) & (lon <= lonmax)
10
11    # Adaptive point size based on bounding box area
12    area = (latmax - latmin) * (lonmax - lonmin)
13    point_size = max(0.05, min(10, 500 / area)) # Ensures reasonable point size
14
15    plt.figure(figsize=(10, 6))
16    ax = plt.axes(projection=ccrs.PlateCarree())
17    ax.set_extent([lonmin, lonmax, latmin, latmax])
18    ax.add_feature(cfeature.LAND, edgecolor='black')
19    ax.add_feature(cfeature.COASTLINE)
20    ax.add_feature(cfeature.BORDERS, linestyle=':')
21
22    plt.scatter(lon[mask], lat[mask], c=t2m[mask], cmap='jet', s=point_size,
23                transform=ccrs.PlateCarree())
24    plt.colorbar(label="Temp (K)")
25    plt.title(title)
26    plt.savefig(fname, dpi=300, bbox_inches='tight')
27    plt.show()

```

Using this function, we generate two figures displaying the global distribution of 2-meter temperature and a zoomed-in view over Germany.

Interpolated Visualization of 2-Meter Temperature (T2M)

To enhance the visualization of the 2-meter temperature field, we interpolate the scattered GRIB data onto a regular grid using cubic interpolation. This results in a smooth temperature field representation. The interpolation function is implemented as follows:

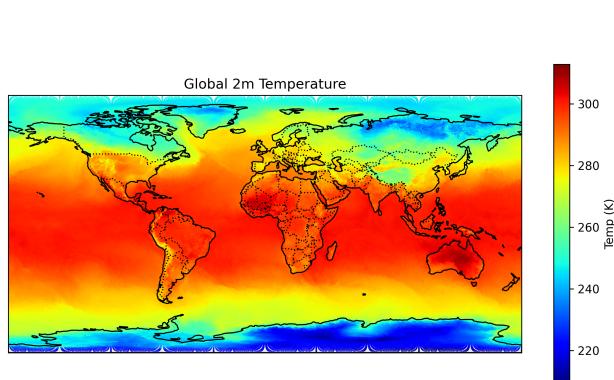


Figure 3.3: Global 2m temperature field.

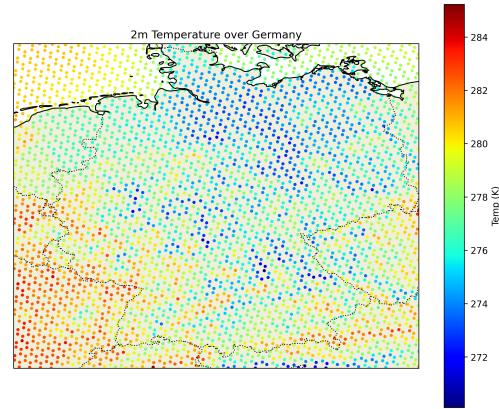


Figure 3.4: 2m temperature field over Germany.

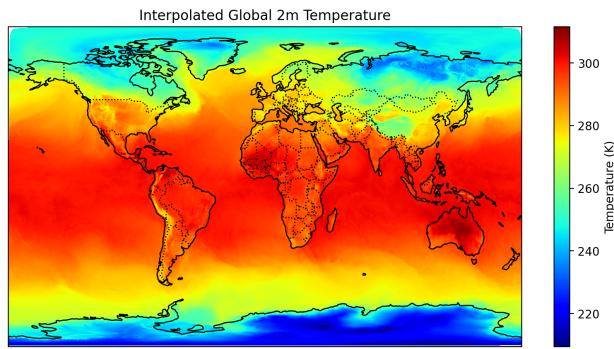


Figure 3.5: Interpolated global 2m temperature field.

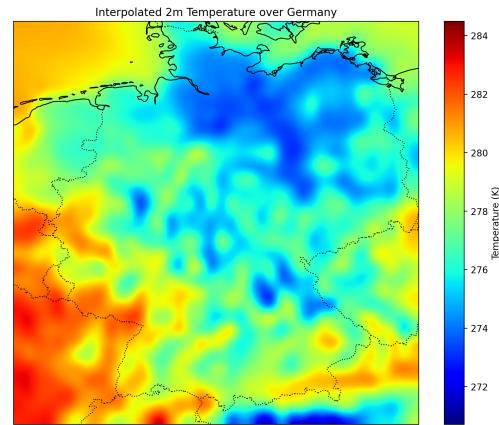


Figure 3.6: Interpolated 2m temperature field over Germany.

Interpolating T2M to a Regular Grid

```

1 import numpy as np
2 from scipy.interpolate import griddata
3
4 def interpolate_to_grid(lat, lon, t2m, bbox, grid_res=0.25):
5     """Interpolates T2M data onto a regular lat/lon grid."""
6     latmin, latmax, lonmin, lonmax = bbox
7
8     # Define a smooth regular grid
9     grid_lat = np.arange(latmin, latmax, grid_res)
10    grid_lon = np.arange(lonmin, lonmax, grid_res)
11    lon_grid, lat_grid = np.meshgrid(grid_lon, grid_lat)
12
13    # Use cubic interpolation for smooth output
14    t2m_grid = griddata((lon, lat), t2m, (lon_grid, lat_grid), method='cubic')
15

```

```
16     return lon_grid, lat_grid, t2m_grid
```

Once the temperature field is interpolated, we visualize it using `matplotlib` and `cartopy`. The function for plotting the interpolated data is shown below:

Plotting Interpolated T2M

```
1 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
2 import cartopy.crs as ccrs
3 import cartopy.feature as cfeature
4
5 def plot_t2m_grid(lat, lon, t2m, bbox, title, fname):
6     """Plots interpolated 2m temperature as a smooth heatmap."""
7     lon_grid, lat_grid, t2m_grid = interpolate_to_grid(lat, lon, t2m, bbox)
8
9     # Set reasonable aspect ratio based on bounding box size
10    lon_range = bbox[3] - bbox[2]
11    lat_range = bbox[1] - bbox[0]
12    aspect_ratio = lon_range / lat_range
13    figsize = (10, max(5, 10 / aspect_ratio)) # Maintain consistent width &
14        prevent extreme height
15
16    plt.figure(figsize=figsize)
17    ax = plt.axes(projection=ccrs.PlateCarree())
18    ax.set_extent([bbox[2], bbox[3], bbox[0], bbox[1]])
19    ax.add_feature(cfeature.LAND, edgecolor='black')
20    ax.add_feature(cfeature.COASTLINE)
21    ax.add_feature(cfeature.BORDERS, linestyle=':')
22
23    # Use smooth interpolation and correct aspect ratio
24    img = ax.imshow(t2m_grid, extent=[bbox[2], bbox[3], bbox[0], bbox[1]], origin=
25        'lower',
26                    cmap='jet', transform=ccrs.PlateCarree(), aspect='auto',
27                    interpolation='bicubic')
28
29    plt.colorbar(img, label="Temperature (K)")
30    plt.title(title)
31    plt.savefig(fname, dpi=200, bbox_inches='tight') # Reduce DPI for smaller
32        file size
33    plt.show()
```

Using this interpolation approach, we generate the visualizations shown in Figures 3.5 and 3.6 for the global and regional (Germany) temperature fields, see figure.

Recommendation

Using libraries such as eccodes can be carried out in a very elementary way. At the same time, building packages is an important activity. Keep the balance, being able to do things elementary if necessary, while using packages to work efficiently.

3.3 Accessing SYNOP Observation Files from NetCDF

Observational weather data is often stored in the *BUFR* (Binary Universal Form for the Representation of meteorological data) format, a widely used WMO standard. To facilitate data access, BUFR files are commonly converted into *NetCDF* (Network Common Data Form), which provides a structured, self-describing format suitable for scientific applications.

NetCDF files containing SYNOP observations include essential meteorological variables such as temperature, pressure, humidity, wind speed, and cloud cover. Accessing these files requires a programming framework that can read NetCDF structures efficiently.

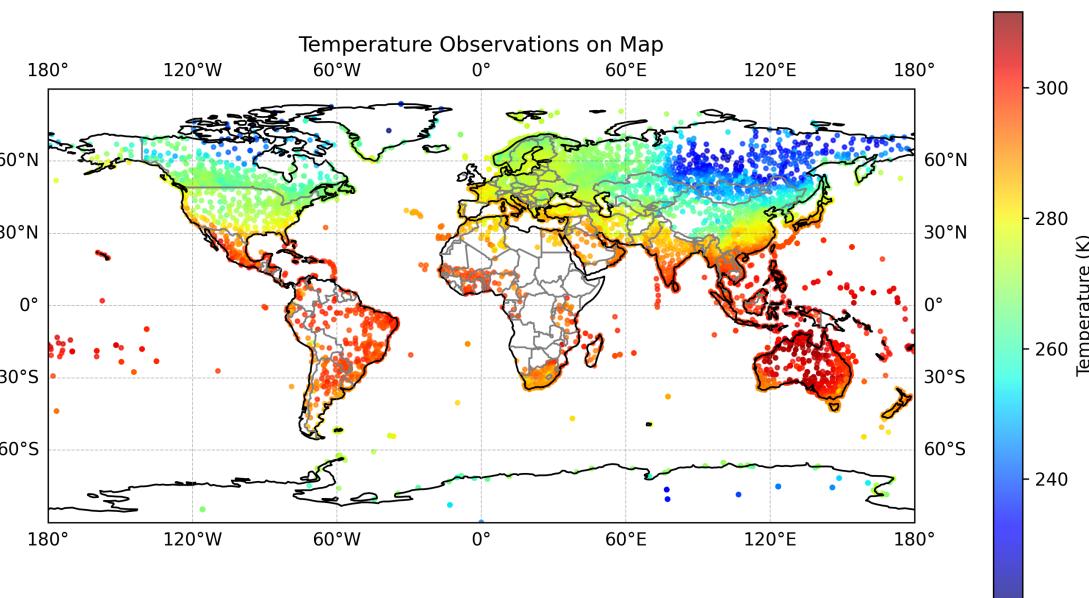


Figure 3.7: Scatter plot of SYNOP temperature observations

Listing Variables in a NetCDF File

To get an overview of the available variables, we use the following script:

```
Listing NetCDF Variables

1 from netCDF4 import Dataset
2
3 def nc_list(file1):
4     """
5         Lists all variables in a given NetCDF file, displaying their names, dimensions
6         , and descriptions.
7     """
8     ncfile = Dataset(file1, 'r')
9
10    print("{:<4} {:>40} {:>10} {:>10} {:>30}".format("No", "Varname", "shape1", "shape2", "Description"))
11    print("-" * 110)
12
```

```

12     nc = 1
13     for varname in ncfile.variables.keys():
14         var = ncfile.variables[varname]
15         description = var.long_name if hasattr(var, "long_name") else "N/A"
16         dims = [len(ncfile.dimensions[dim]) for dim in var.dimensions]
17         shape1 = dims[0] if len(dims) > 0 else ""
18         shape2 = dims[1] if len(dims) > 1 else ""
19         print("{:<4} {:>10} {:>10} {:>10} ".format(nc, varname, shape1,
20               shape2, description))
20         if nc % 10 == 0:
21             print("-" * 110)
22         nc += 1
23     ncfile.close()
24
25 file = "synop.nc"
26 nc_list(file)

```

Example Output

Example Output from nc_list

No	Varname	shape1	shape2	Description
1	edition_number	11993		N/A
2	section1	11993	22	N/A
3	section2	11993	18	N/A
4	section1_master_table_nr	11993		N/A
...				
36	MLAH	11993		Latitude (high accuracy)
)			
37	MLOH	11993		Longitude (high
	accuracy)			
58	MTDBT	11993		Temperature/air
	temperature			
}				

This function provides an overview of the variables, their dimensions, and descriptions if available, making it easier to understand the contents of the NetCDF file before further analysis.

Frameworks for Accessing NetCDF Observations

To work with SYNOP observations in NetCDF, we rely on established *Python* libraries such as:

- netCDF4 – Standard library for reading NetCDF data
- numpy – Efficient numerical computations
- matplotlib – Visualization of meteorological data
- cartopy – Geospatial plotting on maps

Reading SYNOP Data from NetCDF

To extract observation data such as latitude, longitude, and temperature, we use the following Python script:

Reading latitude, longitude, and temperature from a NetCDF SYNOP file

```

1 from netCDF4 import Dataset
2 import numpy as np
3
4 def read_synop_data(filename):
5     """Reads latitude (MLAH), longitude (MLOH), and temperature (MTDBT) from a
6     NetCDF file."""
7     ncf = Dataset(filename, 'r')
8
9     lats = ncf.variables["MLAH"][:]
10    lons = ncf.variables["MLOH"][:]
11    temps = ncf.variables["MTDBT"][:]
12
13    ncf.close()
14    return np.array(lats), np.array(lons), np.array(temps)
15
16 # Example usage
17 lats, lons, temps = read_synop_data("synop.nc")
18 print("Latitudes:", lats[:5])
19 print("Longitudes:", lons[:5])
20 print("Temperatures:", temps[:5])

```

Filtering Missing Values

NetCDF files contain default missing values, e.g., 9.96921×10^{36} . Before using the data, these values should be filtered out, here we employ a simple threshold:

Filtering large missing values in SYNOP NetCDF data

```

1 def filter_missing_values(temps, threshold=1e+20):
2     """Removes large default missing values from temperature data."""
3     return temps[temps < threshold]
4
5 # Example usage
6 temps_filtered = filter_missing_values(temps)

```

Visualizing Observations on a Map

For an intuitive representation of SYNOP data, we can plot temperature observations on a map:

Scatter plot of SYNOP temperature observations

```

1 import numpy as np
2 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
3 import cartopy.crs as ccrs
4 import cartopy.feature as cfeature
5
6 def plot_temperature_map(lats, lons, temps, filename="synop.png", threshold=1e+20)
7     :

```

```

7   """Plots temperature observations on a map, removes large missing values,
8   ensures proper colorbar spacing, and saves the figure."""
9
10  # Filter out large missing values
11  valid_mask = (temps < threshold) & np.isfinite(temps)
12  lats, lons, temps = lats[valid_mask], lons[valid_mask], temps[valid_mask]
13
14  # Create figure with proper aspect ratio
15  fig, ax = plt.subplots(figsize=(10, 6), subplot_kw={'projection': ccrs.
16    PlateCarree()})
17
18  # Scatter plot with properly scaled colorbar
19  scatter = ax.scatter(lons, lats, c=temps, cmap='coolwarm', s=5, alpha=0.7,
20    transform=ccrs.PlateCarree())
21
22  # Add map features
23  ax.coastlines()
24  ax.add_feature(cfeature.BORDERS, edgecolor='gray')
25  ax.gridlines(draw_labels=True, linewidth=0.5, color='gray', alpha=0.5,
26    linestyle='--')
27
28  # Add colorbar with better spacing
29  cbar = plt.colorbar(scatter, ax=ax, fraction=0.04, pad=0.08)
30  cbar.set_label("Temperature (K)")
31
32  # Set title
33  plt.title("Temperature Observations on Map")
34
35  # Save and show the plot
36  plt.savefig(filename, dpi=300, bbox_inches="tight")
37  plt.show()
38
39  # Example usage
40  plot_temperature_map(lats, lons, temps)

```

This script generates a scatter plot where each SYNOP observation is plotted on a geographical map, see Figure 3.7. The color of each point represents the observed temperature, providing a clear spatial overview of meteorological conditions.

3.4 Analysing AIREP Feedback Files in NetCDF Format

Aircraft Reports (AIREP) provide vital meteorological observations from airborne sources. These reports contain real-time measurements of parameters such as temperature, wind speed, pressure, and humidity. The data is often stored in *BUFR* (Binary Universal Form for the Representation of meteorological data) format and later converted into *NetCDF* (Network Common Data Form) for easier access and processing.

Structure of AIREP NetCDF Files

AIREP feedback files in NetCDF format consist of multiple dimensions and variables. The primary dimensions include:

- d_hdr – Number of header entries (stations, timestamps, metadata)
- d_body – Number of observed variables (measurements at different levels)
- d_veri – Number of verification entries

Each observation is associated with key metadata, including:

- lat, lon – Geographic coordinates of the observation
- varno – Variable number defining the type of measurement
- obs – Observed value, bias-corrected
- plevel – Pressure level at which the observation was made
- veri_data – Corresponding modeled values for verification

Inspecting Variables in AIREP NetCDF Files

To get an overview of the available variables, the following Python function lists all variables along with their dimensions and descriptions:

Listing NetCDF Variables in AIREP Files

```
1 from netCDF4 import Dataset
2
3 def nc_list(file1):
4     """
5         Lists all variables in a given NetCDF file, displaying their names, dimensions
6         , and descriptions.
7
8     Parameters:
9         file1 (str): Path to the NetCDF file.
10
11    Output:
12        Prints a formatted table of variables with their dimensions and descriptions.
13
14
15    print("{:<4} {:>40} {:>10} {:>10} {:>30}".format("No", "Varname", "shape1",
16        "shape2", "Description"))
17    print("-" * 110)
18
19    nc = 1
20    for varname in ncfile.variables.keys():
21        var = ncfile.variables[varname]
```

```

22     # Retrieve description from correct attribute
23     description = getattr(var, "longname", "N/A")
24
25     # Get variable dimensions
26     dims = [len(ncfile.dimensions[dim]) for dim in var.dimensions]
27
28     # Ensure at least 2 shape values
29     shape1 = dims[0] if len(dims) > 0 else ""
30     shape2 = dims[1] if len(dims) > 1 else ""
31
32     print("{}:<4} {:>40} {:>10} {:>10} {:>30}".format(nc, varname, shape1,
33     shape2, description))
34
35     if nc % 10 == 0:
36         print("-" * 110)
37     nc += 1
38
39
40 # Example usage
41 file = "monAIREP.nc"
42 nc_list(file)

```

Example Output of nc_list

No	Varname	shape1	shape2	Description
1	i_body	37198		index of 1st entry in report body
2	l_body	37198		number of entries in report body
3	n_level	37198		number of levels in report
4	data_category	37198		BUFR4 data category
5	sub_category	37198		BUFR4 data sub-category
6	center	37198		station processing center
7	sub_center	37198		station processing sub-center
8	obstype	37198		observation type
9	codetype	37198		code type
10	ident	37198		station or satellite id as integer
11	statid	37198	10	station id as character string
12	lat	37198		latitude
13	lon	37198		longitude
14	time	37198		observation minus reference time
15	time_nomi	37198		nominal (synoptic) minus reference time
16	time_dbase	37198		data base minus reference time
17	z_station	37198		station height
18	z_modsurf	37198		model surface height
19	r_state	37198		status of the report
20	r_flags	37198		report quality check flags
21	r_check	37198		check which raised the report status
22	flag_value			
23	sta_corr	37198		station correction indicator
	index_x	37198		index x of model grid point assigned

```

      to report
24   index_y                         37198      index y of model grid point assigned
      to report
25   mdlsfc                           37198      model surface characteristics
26   instype                          37198      station type or satellite instrument
type
27   sun_zenit                        37198      sun zenith angle
28   phase                            37198      aircraft phase
29   tracking                          37198      tracking technique
30   obs_id                           37198      unique observation id
-----
31   source                           37198      input file number
32   record                           37198      record number in the input file
33   subset                           37198      subset number in the record
34   dbkz                            37198      DWD data base id
35   index_d                          37198      model grid diamond index assigned to
      report
36   varno                           187770     type of the observed quantity
37   obs                             187770     bias corrected observation
38   bcov                           187770     bias correction, corrected minus
      observed
39   level                           187770     level of observation
40   level_typ                       187770     type of level information
-----
41   level_sig                        187770     level significance
42   state                            187770     status of the observation
43   flags                            187770     observation quality check flags
44   check                            187770     check which raised the observation
      status flag value
45   e_o                             187770     observational error
46   qual                            187770     observation confidence from data
      provider
47   plevel                           187770     nominal pressure level
48   veri_data                        5          187770     modelled quantity (as indicated by
      veri_ens_member)
49   veri_model                       5          10        model used for verification, e.g.
      COSMO, GME ...
50   veri_run_type                   5          type of model run
-----
51   veri_run_class                  5          class of model run
...

```

Extracting AIREP Observations from NetCDF

To retrieve latitude, longitude, and observation values, we use the following function:

Reading AIREP Observations from NetCDF

```

1 from netCDF4 import Dataset
2 import numpy as np
3 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
4 import cartopy.crs as ccrs
5 import cartopy.feature as cfeature
6
7 def read_airep_data(filename, varno, extra_vars=None):
8     """Reads latitude, longitude, selected observations, and additional variables
        from a NetCDF file."""
9     if extra_vars is None:

```

```

10         extra_vars = []
11
12     ncf = Dataset(filename, 'r')
13
14     # Read header-level variables
15     lat = ncf.variables["lat"][:]
16     lon = ncf.variables["lon"][:]
17
18     # Read body-level variables
19     varno_all = ncf.variables["varno"][:]
20     obs_all = ncf.variables["obs"][:]
21     l_body = ncf.variables["l_body"][:]
22
23     # Expand lat/lon to match body-level observations
24     ni = len(l_body)
25     ie = np.repeat(range(0, ni), l_body)
26
27     # Find matching variable numbers
28     idx = np.where(varno_all == varno)[0]
29
30     # Filter lat, lon, obs
31     lat_filtered = lat[ie[idx]]
32     lon_filtered = lon[ie[idx]]
33     obs_filtered = obs_all[idx]
34
35     # Read extra variables if requested
36     extra_data = {}
37     for var in extra_vars:
38         if var in ncf.variables:
39             var_data = ncf.variables[var][:]
40             extra_data[var] = var_data[idx] if var_data.shape[0] == len(varno_all)
41         else:
42             var_data[ie[idx]]
43             print(f"Warning: Variable '{var}' not found in NetCDF file.")
44
45     ncf.close()
46     return lat_filtered, lon_filtered, obs_filtered, extra_data

```

Filtering Out Missing Values and Outliers

AIREP NetCDF files may contain default missing values (e.g., 9.96921×10^{36}) and unrealistic outliers. We filter them as follows:

Filtering Missing Values and Outliers in AIREP Data

```

1 def filter_airep_data(lats, lons, obs, threshold=1e+20):
2     """Filters AIREP observations by removing missing values and out-of-range
       temperatures."""
3     valid_mask = (obs < threshold) & np.isfinite(obs)
4     lats, lons, obs = lats[valid_mask], lons[valid_mask], obs[valid_mask]

```

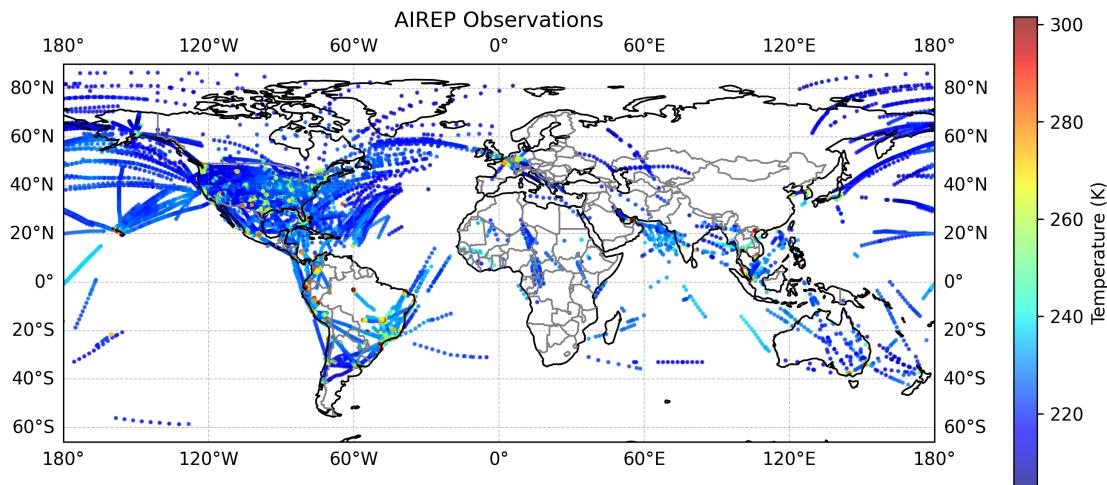


Figure 3.8: Scatter plot of AIREP observations

```

5     temp_min, temp_max = 180, 320
6     physical_mask = (obs >= temp_min) & (obs <= temp_max)
7     return lats[physical_mask], lons[physical_mask], obs[physical_mask]

```

Visualizing AIREP Observations on a Map

For a better understanding of the spatial distribution of AIREP observations, we plot them on a map using the following function:

Plotting AIREP Observations on a Map

```

1 def plot_airep_map(lats, lons, obs, filename="airep.png"):
2     """Plots AIREP observations on a map after filtering out-of-range temperatures
3     """
4
5     fig, ax = plt.subplots(figsize=(10, 6), subplot_kw={'projection': ccrs.
6         PlateCarree()})
7
8     scatter = ax.scatter(lons, lats, c=obs, cmap='jet', s=2, alpha=0.7, transform=
9         ccrs.PlateCarree())
10
11    ax.coastlines()
12    ax.add_feature(cfeature.BORDERS, edgecolor='gray')
13    ax.gridlines(draw_labels=True, linewidth=0.5, color='gray', alpha=0.5,
14        linestyle='--')
15
16    # Ensure the colorbar does not exceed figure height
17    cbar = fig.colorbar(scatter, ax=ax, orientation='vertical', fraction=0.04, pad
18        =0.08, shrink=0.8)
19    cbar.set_label("Temperature (K)")

```

```

16     plt.title("AIREP Observations")
17     plt.savefig(filename, dpi=300, bbox_inches="tight")
18     plt.show()
19
20 # Example usage
21 lats_filtered, lons_filtered, obs_filtered = filter_airep_data(lats, lons, obs)
22 plot_airep_map(lats_filtered, lons_filtered, obs_filtered)

```

The visualization of Figure 3.10 allows for a quick assessment of the coverage and accuracy of aircraft-derived meteorological data.

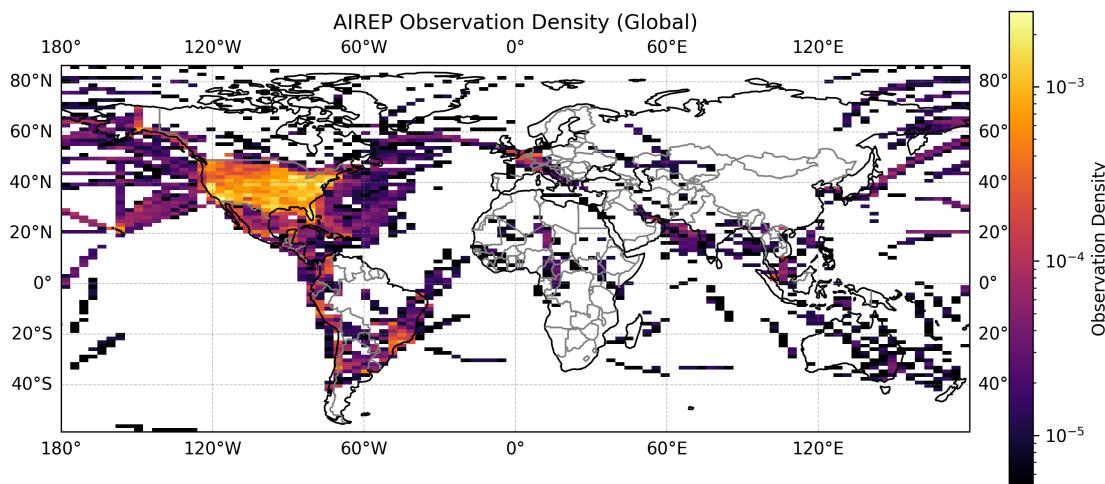


Figure 3.9: AIREP density in its horizontal distribution, while daytime in the US.

We can now analyse these data, for example by visualization of measurement density in horizontal or vertical distribution.

Global AIREP Density Visualization

```

1 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
2 import cartopy.crs as ccrs
3 import cartopy.feature as cfeature
4 import numpy as np
5 from scipy.stats import gaussian_kde
6 from netCDF4 import Dataset
7
8 def plot_global_density(lats, lons,
9                         filename="airep_global_density.png"):
10    """Generates a density plot of AIREP observations on a world map
11    with an optimized colormap."""
12    fig, ax = plt.subplots(figsize=(10, 6),
13                          subplot_kw={'projection': ccrs.PlateCarree()})
14
15    # Compute 2D histogram
16    hist, xedges, yedges = np.histogram2d(lons, lats,

```

```

17                               bins=100, density=True)

18
19     # Use a perceptually uniform colormap (e.g., 'inferno')
20     pcm = ax.pcolormesh(xedges, yedges, hist.T, cmap='inferno',
21                           norm=plt.matplotlib.colors.LogNorm(
22                               vmin=hist[hist > 0].min(),
23                               vmax=hist.max()),
24                           transform=ccrs.PlateCarree())
25
26     ax.coastlines()
27     ax.add_feature(cfeature.BORDERS, edgecolor='gray')
28     ax.gridlines(draw_labels=True, linewidth=0.5,
29                   color='gray', alpha=0.5, linestyle='--')

30
31     # Adjust padding to ensure axis does not crowd the figure
32     plt.subplots_adjust(left=0.1, right=0.9, top=0.9, bottom=0.1)

33
34     # Ensure colorbar does not exceed figure size
35     cbar = fig.colorbar(pcm, ax=ax, orientation='vertical',
36                          fraction=0.04, pad=0.04, shrink=0.8)
37     cbar.set_label("Observation Density")

38
39     plt.title("AIREP Observation Density (Global)")
40     plt.savefig(filename, dpi=300, bbox_inches="tight")
41     plt.show()

```

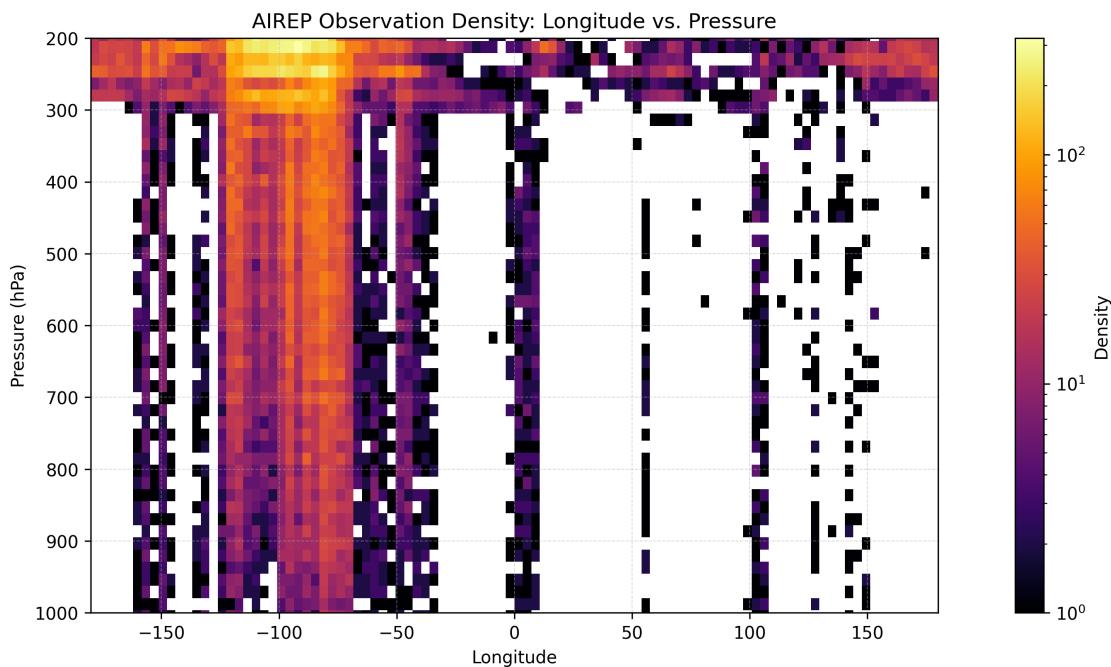


Figure 3.10: AIREP density vs vertical height in hPa and longitude.

The following code will generate a density distribution over height and longitudes.

Vertical Distribution of AIRPE Observations

```

1 def plot_height_histogram(lons, heights,
2                           filename="airep_height_density.png"):
3     """Generates a histogram of longitude vs. height, converting pressure
4     to altitude with 1000 hPa at the bottom and 200 hPa at the top."""
5     fig, ax = plt.subplots(figsize=(10, 6))
6
7     # Convert pressure Pa to hPa
8     heights = heights / 100
9
10    # Create 2D histogram
11    hist, xedges, yedges = np.histogram2d(lons, heights,
12                                         bins=(100, 50))
13
14    # Use the same optimized colormap as in global density plot
15    pcm = ax.pcolormesh(xedges, yedges, hist.T, cmap='inferno',
16                         norm=plt.matplotlib.colors.LogNorm(
17                             vmin=hist[hist > 0].min(),
18                             vmax=hist.max()))
19
20    cbar = fig.colorbar(pcm, ax=ax, orientation='vertical',
21                        fraction=0.04, pad=0.08)
22    cbar.set_label("Density")
23
24    plt.xlabel("Longitude")
25    plt.ylabel("Pressure (hPa)")
26    plt.title("AIREP Observation Density: Longitude vs. Pressure")
27    plt.ylim(1000, 200) # Invert y-axis so 1000 hPa is at bottom
28    plt.grid(True, linestyle='--', linewidth=0.5, alpha=0.5)
29
30    plt.savefig(filename, dpi=300, bbox_inches="tight")
31    plt.show()

```

3.4.1 Plotting Scalar Fields on ICON Triangular Grids

To visualize ICON model output fields on the native triangular grid, we combine the triangular mesh geometry from the ICON grid file with field values from the forecast GRIB file. This allows for accurate visualization of quantities such as temperature or land-sea mask using the `matplotlib` and `cartopy` libraries.

We demonstrate the full process below using the land-sea mask field `lsm` as an example.

Reading the ICON Grid

The ICON grid file contains the geographical coordinates of each triangle vertex (vlon, vlat) and the connectivity table (vertex_of_cell) defining which three vertices form each triangle.

Reading the ICON Grid File

```

1 import numpy as np
2 import matplotlib.tri as mtri
3 import netCDF4 as nc
4
5 gridfile = "icon_grid_0043_R02B04_G.nc"
6 print('Reading grid file:', gridfile)
7
8 with nc.Dataset(gridfile) as f:
9     vlon = f['vlon'][::] * 180 / np.pi
10    vlat = f['vlat'][::] * 180 / np.pi
11    vertex_of_cell = f['vertex_of_cell'][::] - 1 # convert from 1-based to 0-based
12      indexing
13
14    triangulation = mtri.Triangulation(vlon, vlat, vertex_of_cell.T)

```

Extracting Forecast Data from the GRIB File

Forecast fields are read from a GRIB file using the eccodes interface. We use a helper function to extract the field matching a given short name:

Extracting Field from GRIB

```

1 import eccodes
2
3 def extract_values(grib_file, sname):
4     with open(grib_file, 'rb') as f:
5         while True:
6             gid = eccodes.codes_grib_new_from_file(f)
7             if gid is None:
8                 break
9
10            short_name = eccodes.codes_get(gid, "shortName")
11            if short_name == sname:
12                values = eccodes.codes_get_array(gid, "values")
13                eccodes.codes_release(gid)
14                return values
15
16            eccodes.codes_release(gid)
17
18    raise ValueError(f"shortName '{sname}' not found in {grib_file}")

```

Reading the Field Data

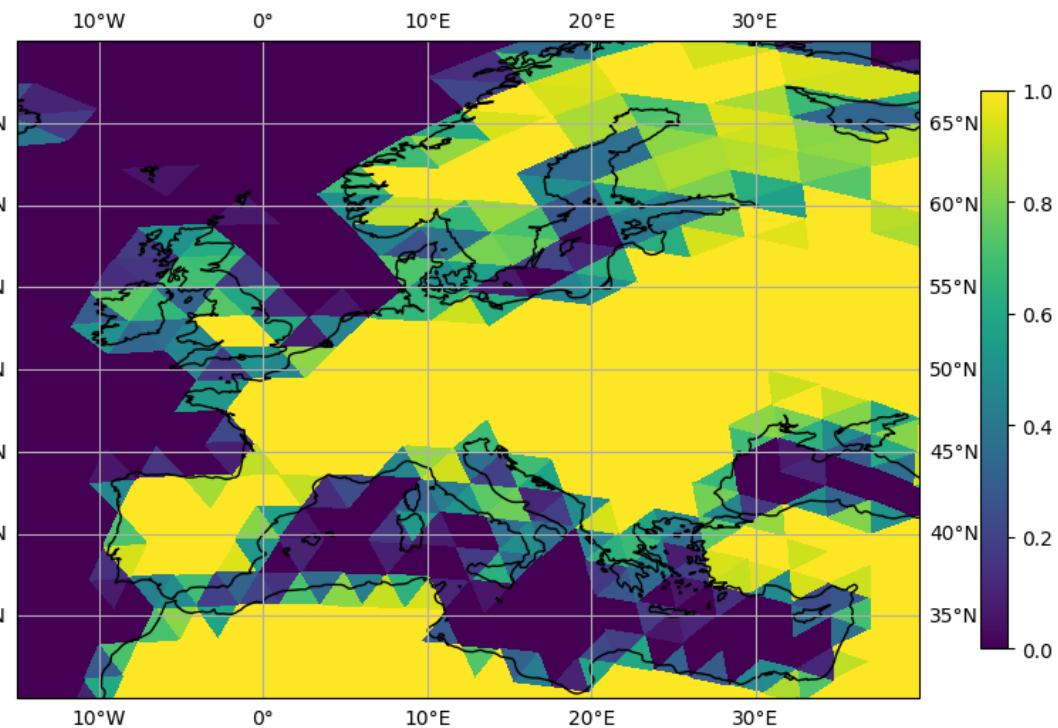
```
1 valfile = "fc_R02B04.2022010100"
2 values = extract_values(valfile, "lsm") # land-sea mask
```

Plotting the Field with Cartopy

We use cartopy to overlay the triangulated scalar field on a map. The values are visualized using tripcolor, with a colorbar for interpretation.

Plotting the ICON Triangular Field

```
1 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
2 import cartopy.crs as ccrs
3
4 fig, ax = plt.subplots(figsize=(10, 5), subplot_kw={'projection': ccrs.PlateCarree
    ()})
5
6 # Plot the scalar field on the triangulated grid
7 tpc = ax.tripcolor(triangulation, facecolors=values, cmap='viridis', shading='flat
    ')
8
9 # Add map features
10 ax.coastlines()
11 ax.set_title("ICON Land-Sea Mask (triangular grid)")
12 plt.colorbar(tpc, ax=ax, shrink=0.8, label="Land-Sea Mask")
13
14 plt.savefig("images/icon_lsm_plot.png")
15 plt.show()
```



This method can be applied to any scalar field available in the forecast file, such as surface temperature (T_G) or wind speed components ($10u$, $10v$). The same triangulation can be reused for all variables defined per triangle. The scripts will also work if fields are defined on triangle vertices, tripcolor is quite powerful.

Chapter 4

Basics of Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning (AI/ML)

4.1 AI and ML - Basic Ideas

Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Machine Learning (ML) are transforming the way problems are approached across various fields, including geosciences, weather forecasting, climate science, language processing, and decision-making. This section introduces AI and ML from three fundamental perspectives: as a problem-solving approach, as a set of tools, and as a new paradigm for interactivity and services.

4.1.1 AI and ML as a Problem-Solving Approach

Traditional problem-solving methods rely on explicit mathematical models based on domain knowledge. These models work well for structured problems but struggle with complex, high-dimensional data. AI and ML take a different approach:

- **Data-Driven Learning:** Instead of defining rules explicitly, ML algorithms learn patterns from large datasets.
- **Universal Approximators:** Neural networks and other ML techniques act as function approximators, capable of modeling intricate relationships in data.
- **Applications Across Domains:** ML is revolutionizing fields such as weather forecasting, climate modeling, speech recognition, and autonomous systems.

One of the key concepts in ML is the approximation of an unknown function $f(x)$ using a trained model $\hat{f}(x)$. A neural network, for instance, seeks to minimize the error between the predicted and actual values:

$$\min_{\theta} \sum_{i=1}^N L(y_i, \hat{f}(x_i; \theta)), \quad (4.1)$$

where θ represents the model parameters, x_i are input features, and y_i are the corresponding target values.

Though AI/ML tools are usually universally applicable, still their reliable application and deployment needs all the domain knowledge which is traditionally acquired and necessary for classical modelling and its application. AI/ML does not replace domain knowledge, but is an additional tool and technique to make domain scientists do their work in a better way.

4.1.2 AI and ML as a Set of Tools

AI/ML development is supported by a growing ecosystem of frameworks, computational resources, and cloud-based services that make it more accessible than ever.

Core Machine Learning Frameworks. Several powerful frameworks provide the foundation for AI development:

- **PyTorch** and **TensorFlow**: Widely used deep learning libraries that allow researchers and engineers to build, train, and deploy neural networks efficiently.
- **scikit-learn**: A robust library for traditional machine learning algorithms such as regression, clustering, and decision trees.

AI as a Service. Many pre-trained AI models and APIs allow users to integrate ML functionalities without requiring deep expertise in AI model building:

- **LLMs as a Service**: Companies such as OpenAI, Google, and Meta provide access to state-of-the-art large language models via APIs.
- **On-Premise AI**: Locally installed models like Llama, Mistral, and DeepSeek enable AI applications without relying on cloud services and without the dependence on big tech companies.

Computational Resources. The performance of AI models depends heavily on the hardware and infrastructure used for training and inference:

- **Local GPUs and TPUs**: Accelerate AI computations on personal or institutional hardware.
- **Cloud-Based AI Computing**: Platforms such as AWS, Google Cloud, and Azure provide scalable computing resources.
- **Edge Computing**: Optimized AI models can run on mobile devices and embedded systems, reducing reliance on centralized servers.

4.1.3 AI and ML as a New Paradigm for Interactivity and Services

Beyond being just tools, AI and ML are reshaping how humans interact with technology and how productivity can be enhanced across various industries. However, this transformation is not without its challenges. Many AI applications promise significant efficiency gains, but they also introduce

risks such as reliability issues, ethical concerns, and the need for human oversight. Understanding these limitations is crucial to harness AI effectively.

AI-Powered Productivity. AI significantly improves efficiency and accelerates workflows:

- **Code Assistants:** AI-powered tools, such as GitHub Copilot and ChatGPT-based interfaces, assist developers in writing, debugging, and optimizing code.
- **AI in Research:** AI facilitates the analysis of large datasets, aids in hypothesis generation, and automates repetitive tasks in scientific discovery.

Critical Evaluation. While AI-enhanced productivity is often presented as a game-changer, it also brings new dependencies and challenges. AI-generated code can contain errors that are difficult to detect, and over-reliance on AI in research may lead to superficial conclusions if users fail to critically assess AI-generated insights. Furthermore, the quality of AI output is only as good as the data it is trained on, making data curation and validation essential. Detecting errors in AI algorithms requires deep knowledge of both AI tools and the specific domain of application.

AI in Decision Support. AI is increasingly integrated into decision-making processes across multiple domains:

- **Weather and Climate Services:** AI enhances forecasting models, improves risk assessment, and aids in climate trend analysis.
- **Healthcare:** AI supports medical diagnosis, enables personalized treatment recommendations, and assists in predictive analytics.
- **Autonomous Systems:** AI powers self-operating systems, including autonomous vehicles, robotics, and intelligent infrastructure.

Critical Evaluation. While AI has great potential in decision support, it also raises concerns about transparency, bias, and accountability. AI-driven forecasts and medical diagnostics must be interpretable and explainable to ensure trust. In high-stakes environments, blind reliance on AI can lead to severe consequences, making human oversight and hybrid AI-human decision-making crucial.

The Need for AI Education. As AI adoption grows, so does the necessity for education and training. For domain scientists, this means moving beyond traditional methods and integrating AI-driven approaches into their workflows.

- Mastering AI frameworks enables domain experts to develop and refine tailored solutions.
- Understanding AI-powered services is crucial for their effective and responsible integration.
- Awareness of AI ethics and limitations is essential to ensure transparency, fairness, and accountability.

Critical Evaluation. The growing need for AI education is evident, but it also presents significant challenges. Many domain experts lack formal training in AI, making interdisciplinary collaboration essential. Additionally, AI education must go beyond technical aspects to include discussions on ethical AI use, bias mitigation, and responsible development. Without a strong foundation in these areas, AI could be misused or misinterpreted, leading to unreliable results.

Many AI experts approach domain problems with the assumption that data-driven models can replace traditional expertise, often underestimating the complexity and contextual knowledge required for accurate interpretation. This overconfidence can lead to models that appear to perform well on benchmarks but fail in real-world applications due to overlooked domain-specific constraints and hidden biases.

4.1.4 Conclusion

AI and ML are more than just tools—they represent a fundamental shift in problem-solving, technology, and human-computer interaction. From universal approximators to AI-driven interactive services, these methods continue to reshape industries and scientific research. As AI adoption grows, so does the need for structured education and expertise in this rapidly evolving field.

Recommendation

The tools available today by AI/ML technology are representing a technological shift. Develop a balanced view, which sees the potential and the limitations at the same time. The shift can be compared to the development of book copying technology, radio or the invention of flight.

4.2 Torch Tensors - Basics and Their Role in Minimization

Deep learning frameworks simplify the development and deployment of machine learning models, but they must balance flexibility, efficiency, and ease of use. PyTorch has emerged as one of the most widely adopted frameworks because it combines an intuitive, Pythonic interface with powerful automatic differentiation and dynamic computation graph capabilities. Unlike static graph-based frameworks, PyTorch allows for more flexible model development, making it particularly useful for research, experimentation, and rapid prototyping. Its seamless GPU acceleration, built-in support for deep learning libraries, and strong community adoption make it a critical tool for both academic and industrial AI applications.

Torch tensors are the fundamental data structures in PyTorch. They are similar to NumPy arrays but come with additional capabilities, such as GPU acceleration and automatic differentiation, which are essential for training neural networks. In particular, tensors with the attribute `requires_grad=True` allow PyTorch to automatically compute gradients, a key component in optimization algorithms like gradient descent.

Below, we illustrate basic tensor operations and demonstrate how tensors enable minimization through gradient computation.

Tensor Operations and Gradients

```
1 import torch
2
3 # Create a tensor from a Python list
4 a = torch.tensor([1.0, 2.0, 3.0])
5 print("Tensor a:", a)
6
```

```
7 # Create a 3x3 tensor with random values
8 b = torch.rand(3, 3)
9 print("Random tensor b:\n", b)
10
11 # Perform arithmetic: multiply tensor 'a' by 2
12 c = a * 2
13 print("Tensor c (a multiplied by 2):", c)
14
15 # For minimization, we need tensors that track gradients.
16 # Create a tensor with requires_grad=True so that operations on it are tracked.
17 x = torch.tensor([2.0, 3.0], requires_grad=True)
18
19 # Define a simple quadratic function: f(x) = x[0]^2 + x[1]^2
20 y = x[0]**2 + x[1]**2
21
22 # Compute gradients with respect to x using backpropagation
23 y.backward()
24
25 # The gradients of y with respect to x are stored in x.grad
26 print("Gradients of y with respect to x:", x.grad)
```

Output:

```
Tensor a: tensor([1., 2., 3.])
Random tensor b:
tensor([[0.3450, 0.2811, 0.0059],
       [0.6343, 0.5166, 0.4793],
       [0.3613, 0.5797, 0.5450]])
Tensor c (a multiplied by 2): tensor([2., 4., 6.])
Gradients of y with respect to x: tensor([4., 6.])
```

In this example, we compute the gradient of a quadratic function, which is a common operation in optimization tasks. When training a neural network, the loss function is minimized by iteratively updating the model parameters (stored as tensors) based on their computed gradients. This automatic differentiation capability is crucial for efficient and effective model training.

Recommendation

Automatic gradient calculation, optimization, and learning are at the core of the technological transformation.

4.3 PyTorch Fundamentals - Model, Loss, and Optimizer

First, let us install the necessary packages in our Python virtual environment. This step is assumed to be done already, we discussed how to install python packages in various environments in depth in the preceding parts of this tutorial.

Now, in your Python program, either directly in a .py file or a Jupyter Notebook, you need to import the required packages.

Torch Packages

```
1 import torch
2 import torch.nn as nn
3 import torch.optim as optim
```

Next, we define a dataset to train on. In many of our examples we create synthetic data. For instance, you may generate random data for regression or classification tasks, or, as in the sine curve example below, data derived from mathematical functions. Often, the dataset is split into training and testing subsets to evaluate model performance and to prevent overfitting.

Below is an example code that sets up training and test data for a generic regression task. Here, we generate random input features and corresponding target values:

Synthetic Data

```
1 import torch
2 import numpy as np
3 from torch.utils.data import TensorDataset, DataLoader
4
5 # Generate synthetic data: 100 samples with 10 features each
6 X = np.random.rand(100, 10)
7 y = np.random.rand(100, 1)
8
9 # Convert numpy arrays to torch tensors
10 X_tensor = torch.tensor(X, dtype=torch.float32)
11 y_tensor = torch.tensor(y, dtype=torch.float32)
12
13 # Create a TensorDataset and then split it into training and test sets
14 dataset = TensorDataset(X_tensor, y_tensor)
15 train_size = int(0.8 * len(dataset))
16 test_size = len(dataset) - train_size
17 train_dataset, test_dataset = torch.utils.data.random_split(dataset, [train_size,
   test_size])
18
19 # Diagnostic Output
20 print(f"Train dataset size: {len(train_dataset)}, Test dataset size: {len(
   test_dataset)}")
21
22 # Show shapes of the first batch
23 first_train_sample = train_dataset[0]
24 print(f"First training sample - X shape: {first_train_sample[0].shape}, y shape: {(
   first_train_sample[1].shape)}")
25
26 # Show content of the first training sample
27 print(f"First training sample - X: {first_train_sample[0].numpy()}, y: {(
   first_train_sample[1].numpy())}")
```

Output:

Train dataset size: 80, Test dataset size: 20

```
First training sample - X shape: torch.Size([10]), y shape: torch.Size([1])
First training sample - X: [0.2555835  0.13075094  0.1967931   0.3170668   0.08261041
  0.68258333
  0.92773515  0.7652774   0.07989042  0.28203908], y: [0.06629485]
```

Now, let us define a simple neural network with one hidden layer. This network consists of an input layer, one hidden layer with a ReLU activation, and an output layer.

Simple NN Model

```
1 import torch
2 import torch.nn as nn
3 import torch.optim as optim
4
5 class SimpleNN(nn.Module):
6     def __init__(self, input_size, hidden_size, output_size):
7         super(SimpleNN, self).__init__()
8         self.fc1 = nn.Linear(input_size, hidden_size)
9         self.relu = nn.ReLU()
10        self.fc2 = nn.Linear(hidden_size, output_size)
11
12    def forward(self, x):
13        x = self.fc1(x)
14        x = self.relu(x)
15        x = self.fc2(x)
16        return x
17
18 # Instantiate the model
19 input_size = 10
20 hidden_size = 16
21 output_size = 1
22 model = SimpleNN(input_size, hidden_size, output_size)
23
24 # Define the loss function and optimizer
25 criterion = nn.MSELoss()
26 optimizer = torch.optim.Adam(model.parameters(), lr=0.01)
27
28 print(model)
```

Output:

```
SimpleNN(
  (fc1): Linear(in_features=10, out_features=16, bias=True)
  (relu): ReLU()
  (fc2): Linear(in_features=16, out_features=1, bias=True)
)
```

The script begins by importing the necessary PyTorch modules: `torch` for core functionalities, `torch.nn` for neural network components, and `torch.optim` for optimization algorithms.

A simple feedforward neural network is defined using the `SimpleNN` class, which inherits from `nn.Module`. The network consists of two fully connected layers. The first layer (`fc1`) maps the input

features to a hidden layer, followed by a ReLU activation function to introduce non-linearity. The second layer (fc2) maps the hidden layer to the output layer. The forward pass is computed as:

$$x = \text{fc1}(x) \rightarrow \text{ReLU}(x) \rightarrow \text{fc2}(x). \quad (4.2)$$

The model is instantiated with three parameters: `input_size` = 10, representing the number of input features, `hidden_size` = 16, defining the number of neurons in the hidden layer, and `output_size` = 1, indicating a single output value, which is appropriate for regression tasks.

To train the model, the loss function is set to Mean Squared Error (MSE), given by:

$$\mathcal{L} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2. \quad (4.3)$$

The Adam optimizer is used to update the model parameters with a learning rate of 0.01.

Finally, the model architecture is printed to verify its structure.

The Adam Optimizer. The Adam optimizer (Adaptive Moment Estimation) uses the first moment estimate m_t and the second moment estimate v_t to compute an adaptive learning rate for each parameter.

1. *First moment estimate m_t :* This is an exponentially weighted moving average of past gradients, representing a smoothed estimate of the mean gradient:

$$m_t = \beta_1 m_{t-1} + (1 - \beta_1) g_t. \quad (4.4)$$

Since m_t starts from zero, Adam applies bias correction:

$$\hat{m}_t = \frac{m_t}{1 - \beta_1^t}. \quad (4.5)$$

This correction ensures that \hat{m}_t is an unbiased estimate of the true gradient expectation.

2. *Second moment estimate v_t :* This is an exponentially weighted moving average of past squared gradients, approximating the variance of the gradient:

$$v_t = \beta_2 v_{t-1} + (1 - \beta_2) g_t^2. \quad (4.6)$$

Similar to m_t , Adam applies bias correction:

$$\hat{v}_t = \frac{v_t}{1 - \beta_2^t}. \quad (4.7)$$

This correction ensures that \hat{v}_t is an unbiased estimate of the second moment.

3. *Parameter update:* Using the corrected estimates \hat{m}_t and \hat{v}_t , Adam updates the parameters θ as follows:

$$\theta_{t+1} = \theta_t - \frac{\eta}{\sqrt{\hat{v}_t} + \epsilon} \hat{m}_t. \quad (4.8)$$

Here, η is the learning rate, and ϵ is a small constant to prevent division by zero.

In summary, Adam normalizes the gradient update using the estimated first and second moments, allowing each parameter to have an individual learning rate that adapts to the scale of its gradients. This leads to more stable and efficient optimization compared to standard gradient descent.

4.3.1 Data Handling - Dataset and DataLoader

Neural networks are typically trained on large datasets, making it inefficient to load all data into memory at once. Instead, **data loaders** are used to efficiently handle batch processing, shuffling, and parallel loading.

Given a dataset with input samples $\mathbf{X} = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_N\}$ and corresponding labels $\mathbf{Y} = \{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_N\}$, a data loader divides the dataset into mini-batches of size B . At each training step, the model processes a batch:

$$(\mathbf{X}_B, \mathbf{Y}_B) = \{(x_i, y_i)\}_{i=1}^B. \quad (4.9)$$

Key advantages of using data loaders include:

- **Memory efficiency:** Only small batches are loaded into memory at a time.
- **Shuffling:** Randomizing data order prevents overfitting to specific patterns.
- **Parallel processing:** Multiple CPU threads can load data asynchronously.

In PyTorch, a DataLoader automates these tasks, enabling efficient training on large datasets.

After installing the necessary packages, you can use PyTorch's DataLoader to efficiently handle data in mini-batches. This is particularly useful for training, as it enables you to iterate over the dataset in smaller chunks, reducing memory usage and often improving convergence. Here's an example using synthetic data with a TensorDataset.

We use the tensors `X_tensor` and `y_tensor` from above.

Data Loader

```

1 from torch.utils.data import DataLoader
2
3 # Create a DataLoader for the training dataset
4 dataloader = DataLoader(train_dataset, batch_size=16, shuffle=True)
5
6 # Example: Iterate through one batch
7 n = 1
8 for batch_X, batch_y in dataloader:
9     print(f"{n}) Batch X shape:", batch_X.size())
10    print("      Batch y shape:", batch_y.size())
11    n += 1

```

Output:

```

1) Batch X shape: torch.Size([16, 10])
   Batch y shape: torch.Size([16, 1])
2) Batch X shape: torch.Size([16, 10])
   Batch y shape: torch.Size([16, 1])
3) Batch X shape: torch.Size([16, 10])
   Batch y shape: torch.Size([16, 1])
4) Batch X shape: torch.Size([16, 10])
   Batch y shape: torch.Size([16, 1])
5) Batch X shape: torch.Size([16, 10])

```

```
Batch y shape: torch.Size([16, 1])
Selection deleted
```

In the example from above, the dataset contains $N = 100$ samples, which is split into:

- **Training set:** 80 samples
- **Test set:** 20 samples

The script creates a DataLoader that loads batches of data from the training dataset. Each batch consists of 16 samples, with:

- **Batch X shape:** (16, 10), meaning each batch contains 16 feature vectors, each with 10 features.
 - **Batch y shape:** (16, 1), meaning each batch contains 16 target values, each a scalar.
1. The loop runs exactly 5 times because the dataset contains 80 training samples, and the batch size is 16.
 2. Each iteration produces a batch of size 16, confirming that the DataLoader correctly partitions the dataset.
 3. Since `shuffle=True`, the data order is randomized, ensuring that each epoch has a different sample arrangement.

The DataLoader successfully partitions the dataset into evenly sized mini-batches, verifying that the batch processing mechanism functions as expected.

4.4 Simple Neural Network Training Example

We now develop an example that demonstrates how to approximate the sine function using a simple neural network built with PyTorch. We generate data from the sine curve, create a dataset with a DataLoader for mini-batch training, define a neural network model, train it using mean squared error loss, and finally plot the network's predictions against the actual sine values.

Sine Curve Approximation

```

1 import torch
2 import torch.nn as nn
3 import torch.optim as optim
4 import numpy as np
5 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
6 from torch.utils.data import TensorDataset, DataLoader
7
8 # Generate dataset for sine curve approximation
9 x = np.linspace(0, 2 * np.pi, 1000)
10 y = np.sin(x)
11
```

```
12 # Convert numpy arrays to torch tensors and add a feature dimension
13 x_tensor = torch.tensor(x, dtype=torch.float32).unsqueeze(1)
14 y_tensor = torch.tensor(y, dtype=torch.float32).unsqueeze(1)
15
16 # Create a TensorDataset and DataLoader for batch processing
17 dataset = TensorDataset(x_tensor, y_tensor)
18 dataloader = DataLoader(dataset, batch_size=32, shuffle=True)
19
20 # Define a simple neural network model
21 class SineModel(nn.Module):
22     def __init__(self):
23         super(SineModel, self).__init__()
24         self.net = nn.Sequential(
25             nn.Linear(1, 16),
26             nn.ReLU(),
27             nn.Linear(16, 16),
28             nn.ReLU(),
29             nn.Linear(16, 1)
30         )
31
32     def forward(self, x):
33         return self.net(x)
34
35 model = SineModel()
36
37 # Set up the loss function and optimizer
38 criterion = nn.MSELoss()
39 optimizer = torch.optim.Adam(model.parameters(), lr=0.01)
40
41 # Training loop
42 num_epochs = 500
43 for epoch in range(num_epochs):
44     for batch_x, batch_y in dataloader:
45         optimizer.zero_grad()
46         outputs = model(batch_x)
47         loss = criterion(outputs, batch_y)
48         loss.backward()
49         optimizer.step()
50     if (epoch + 1) % 100 == 0:
51         print(f'Epoch [{epoch+1}/{num_epochs}], Loss: {loss.item():.4f}')
52
53 # Generate predictions after training
54 with torch.no_grad():
55     predicted = model(x_tensor).detach().numpy()
56
57 # Plot the actual sine curve and the network's predictions
58 plt.figure(figsize=(8, 4))
59 plt.plot(x, y, label='Actual Sine')
60 plt.plot(x, predicted, label='Predicted Sine', linestyle='--')
```

```

61 plt.xlabel('x')
62 plt.ylabel('sin(x)')
63 plt.legend()
64 plt.savefig("sine_approximation.png")

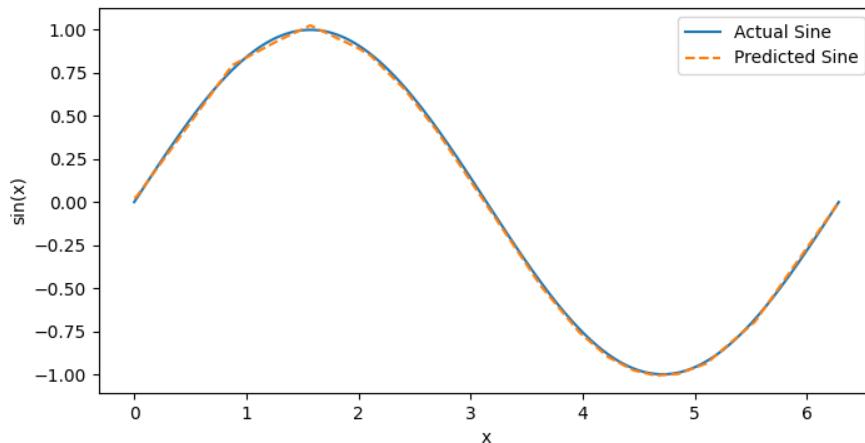
```

Output:

```

Epoch [100/500], Loss: 0.0007
Epoch [200/500], Loss: 0.0005
Epoch [300/500], Loss: 0.0002
Epoch [400/500], Loss: 0.0003
Epoch [500/500], Loss: 0.0002

```

Generated Image:

This code implements a neural network in PyTorch to approximate the sine function using supervised learning.

Dataset Generation: The input values are generated using:

$$x = \text{linspace}(0, 2\pi, 1000). \quad (4.10)$$

The target values are computed as:

$$y = \sin(x). \quad (4.11)$$

The NumPy arrays are converted into PyTorch tensors, with an additional feature dimension added using `unsqueeze(1)`.

DataLoader for Batch Processing: A `TensorDataset` is created, containing the input-output pairs (x, y) , and a `DataLoader` is used with a batch size of 32 and shuffling enabled.

Neural Network Model: The model consists of a simple feedforward neural network with:

- An input layer with 1 neuron.
- Two hidden layers with 16 neurons each, followed by ReLU activation.
- An output layer with 1 neuron.

Mathematically, the forward pass is:

$$\hat{y} = W_3(\max(0, W_2(\max(0, W_1x + b_1)) + b_2)) + b_3. \quad (4.12)$$

Loss Function and Optimizer: The Mean Squared Error (MSE) loss function is used:

$$\mathcal{L} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2. \quad (4.13)$$

The optimizer is Adam with a learning rate of 0.01.

Training Process: The model is trained for 500 epochs. In each epoch:

1. Gradients are reset using `optimizer.zero_grad()`.
2. Predictions are computed with `model(batch_x)`.
3. The loss is calculated using `criterion(outputs, batch_y)`.
4. Backpropagation updates the weights via `loss.backward()` and `optimizer.step()`.

A progress message is printed every 100 epochs.

Prediction and Visualization: After training, the model predicts values for the entire dataset, and the results are plotted:

- The original sine function is plotted as a solid line.
- The neural network's predictions are plotted as a dashed line.

The resulting plot is saved as `sine_approximation.png`.

Programming with tensors in PyTorch requires careful handling to ensure that the automatic differentiation mechanism remains intact. PyTorch's computational graphs track tensor operations dynamically, allowing gradients to be computed automatically via backpropagation.

If operations are performed outside the tensor framework—such as converting tensors to NumPy arrays and then performing computations—the graph structure is lost, and gradient tracking is broken! This disrupts the minimization process, making parameter updates impossible.

To maintain gradient tracking, all computations within the model and loss function must be conducted using PyTorch tensor operations. Additionally, tensors should be created with `requires_grad=True` when gradients are needed, and `detach()` should be used only when explicitly removing a tensor from the computational graph, such as for inference or visualization.

Proper tensor management ensures that PyTorch can fully automate gradient computations, enabling efficient and correct optimization.

Recommendation

Use the sine approximation as generic example, what AI/ML approximators do. Nonlinear mappings are approximated. Scaling this to a huge space, very high-dimensional non-linear mappings like language generation or weather prediction are approximated.

4.4.1 Understanding the PyTorch DataLoader with and without Shuffling

The DataLoader in PyTorch is used to load data in batches, which is particularly useful for training models efficiently. To explore how it works, we create a synthetic dataset where the features in each row encode their row and column positions explicitly, making the effect of shuffling easy to observe.

We first define a tensor X of shape 100×10 , where each element is set to its row index plus a column offset. The labels y are simply the integers from 1 to 100.

Creating Structured Data for DataLoader

```

1 import torch
2 from torch.utils.data import TensorDataset, DataLoader
3
4 # Create data: 100 rows, 10 columns with visible row and column info
5 X = torch.zeros(100, 10, dtype=torch.float32)
6 for i in range(100):
7     for j in range(10):
8         X[i, j] = (i + 1) + (j / 10)
9 print(X[:10, :])
10
11 # Labels: y = 1 to 100
12 y = torch.arange(1, 101, dtype=torch.float32).reshape(-1, 1)

```

We then wrap the data in a TensorDataset and pass it to a DataLoader with batch size 4 and no shuffling. This means that the data will be returned in sequential order.

DataLoader without Shuffling

```

1 dataset = TensorDataset(X, y)
2 loader = DataLoader(dataset, batch_size=4, shuffle=False)
3
4 # Print the first batch with one decimal digit
5 print("First batch (1 digit precision):")
6 for batch_X, batch_y in loader:
7     for i in range(len(batch_X)):
8         x_row = [f"{v:.1f}" for v in batch_X[i]]
9         y_val = f"{batch_y[i].item():.1f}"
10        print(f"x = {x_row}, y = {y_val}")
11        break

```

The output of this batch shows that the first 4 rows are returned in order:

```

First batch (1 digit precision):
x = ['1.0', '1.1', '1.2', '1.3', '1.4', '1.5', '1.6', '1.7', '1.8', '1.9'], y = 1.0
x = ['2.0', '2.1', '2.2', '2.3', '2.4', '2.5', '2.6', '2.7', '2.8', '2.9'], y = 2.0
x = ['3.0', '3.1', '3.2', '3.3', '3.4', '3.5', '3.6', '3.7', '3.8', '3.9'], y = 3.0
x = ['4.0', '4.1', '4.2', '4.3', '4.4', '4.5', '4.6', '4.7', '4.8', '4.9'], y = 4.0

```

Now we repeat the same process, but enable shuffling in the DataLoader. This causes the rows to be returned in random order at the start of each epoch.

DataLoader with Shuffling

```

1 loader2 = DataLoader(dataset, batch_size=4, shuffle=True)
2
3 # Print the first batch with one decimal digit
4 print("First batch (1 digit precision):")
5 for batch_X, batch_y in loader2:
6     for i in range(len(batch_X)):
7         x_row = [f"{v:.1f}" for v in batch_X[i]]
8         y_val = f"{batch_y[i].item():.1f}"
9         print(f"x = {x_row}, y = {y_val}")
10    break

```

This will now print a different (random) batch each time the code is run. For example:

```

First batch (1 digit precision):
x = ['91.0', '91.1', ..., '91.9'], y = 91.0
x = ['39.0', '39.1', ..., '39.9'], y = 39.0
x = ['61.0', '61.1', ..., '61.9'], y = 61.0
x = ['10.0', '10.1', ..., '10.9'], y = 10.0

```

This clear example demonstrates how the PyTorch DataLoader works and how shuffling can be used to randomize input order during training.

4.5 Gradient Field and Decision Boundary

Neural networks provide flexible solutions to complex classification problems. Here, we construct an example where the decision boundary is **highly nonlinear**, making it challenging for traditional linear classifiers.

We utilize PyTorch's automatic differentiation to analyze the **gradient field** of the classification function, revealing the sensitivity of the learned model in different regions.

Generating Data with Two Shifted Ellipses. To illustrate this, we generate synthetic data where points belong to **one of two elliptical regions**, each with different orientations and positions.

Data for Classification

```

1 # Set random seed for reproducibility
2 torch.manual_seed(42)
3 np.random.seed(42)
4
5 N = 900 # Number of samples
6
7 # Generate the same random points in the range [-2, 2] x [-2, 2]
8 X = torch.rand(N, 2) * 4 - 2 # Unchanged points

```

```

9
10 # Define parameters for two smaller, shifted ellipses
11 a1, b1 = 1.0, 0.5
12 a2, b2 = 0.6, 0.9
13 theta1 = np.radians(30)
14 theta2 = np.radians(-45)
15 center1 = torch.tensor([0.9, 0.9])
16 center2 = torch.tensor([-1.1, -0.2])
17
18 X_shifted1 = X - center1
19 X_shifted2 = X - center2
20
21 x1_rot = X_shifted1[:, 0] * np.cos(theta1) + X_shifted1[:, 1] * np.sin(theta1)
22 y1_rot = -X_shifted1[:, 0] * np.sin(theta1) + X_shifted1[:, 1] * np.cos(theta1)
23 inside_ellipse1 = ((x1_rot / a1) ** 2 + (y1_rot / b1) ** 2) < 1
24
25 x2_rot = X_shifted2[:, 0] * np.cos(theta2) + X_shifted2[:, 1] * np.sin(theta2)
26 y2_rot = -X_shifted2[:, 0] * np.sin(theta2) + X_shifted2[:, 1] * np.cos(theta2)
27 inside_ellipse2 = ((x2_rot / a2) ** 2 + (y2_rot / b2) ** 2) < 1
28
29 labels = (inside_ellipse1 | inside_ellipse2).float().unsqueeze(1).numpy()
30
31 plt.figure(figsize=(7, 5))
32 plt.scatter(X[:, 0], X[:, 1], c=labels.squeeze(), cmap="bwr", alpha=1, edgecolors=
  "white")
33 plt.xlabel("Feature 1")
34 plt.ylabel("Feature 2")
35 plt.title("Labels Defined by Two Smaller, Shifted Ellipses")
36 plt.xlim(-2, 2)
37 plt.ylim(-2, 2)
38 plt.grid()
39 plt.colorbar()
40 plt.savefig("points_labeled.png")
41 plt.show()

```

This script:

- Generates $N = 900$ random points within the range $[-2, 2] \times [-2, 2]$.
- Assigns labels based on **two ellipses with different centers and rotations**.
- Uses the **blue-white-red (BWR) color map** to differentiate classes.
- Saves the figure for later comparison.

Training a Neural Network for Classification. We define a **simple feedforward neural network** with a single fully connected layer that maps the **two-dimensional input** to a binary classification output using the sigmoid activation function.

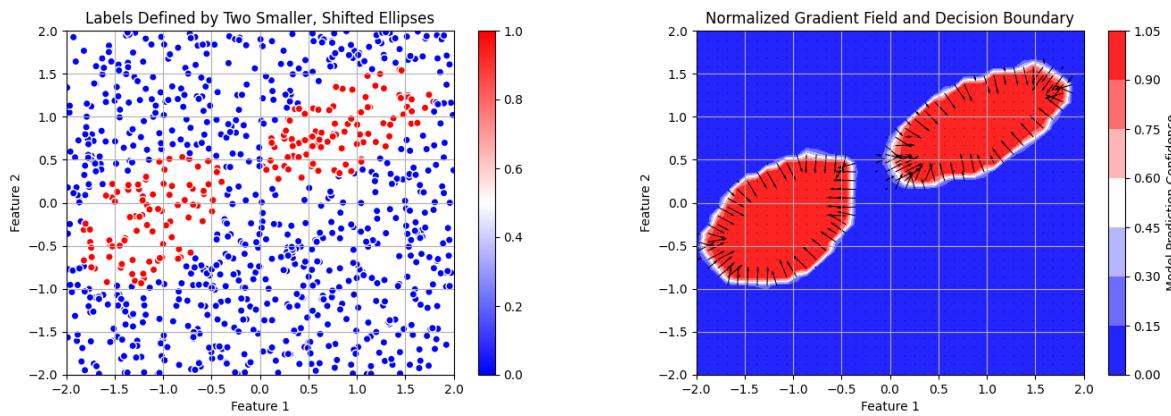


Figure 4.1: The left figure shows the original data with class labels, while the right figure presents the classification result with **gradient information** extracted from the trained model.

SimpleClassifier

```

1 class BetterClassifier(nn.Module):
2     def __init__(self):
3         super().__init__()
4         self.net = nn.Sequential(
5             nn.Linear(2, 32),
6             nn.ReLU(),
7             nn.Linear(32, 1),
8             nn.Sigmoid()
9         )
10
11    def forward(self, x):
12        return self.net(x)
13
14 model = BetterClassifier()

```

The model consists of:

- A **fully connected layer** mapping two input features to a single output.
- A **sigmoid activation function** to produce probabilities.

Next, we train the model using the **binary cross-entropy loss function** and the **Adam optimizer**.

Classifier Training Loop

```

1 import torch.optim as optim
2
3 criterion = nn.BCELoss()
4 optimizer = optim.Adam(model.parameters(), lr=0.01)
5
6 num_epochs = 1000

```

```

7 for epoch in range(num_epochs):
8     optimizer.zero_grad()
9     y_pred = model(X)
10    loss = criterion(y_pred, torch.tensor(labels, dtype=torch.float32))
11    loss.backward()
12    optimizer.step()
13
14    if (epoch + 1) % 200 == 0:
15        print(f"Epoch {epoch+1}/{num_epochs}, Loss: {loss.item():.4f}")

```

Decision Boundary and Gradient Visualization. Once trained, the model is evaluated on a dense grid of points spanning the same input range $[-2, 2] \times [-2, 2]$. This allows us to visualize the decision boundary and analyze the gradient of the labels (classification) with respect to the features (input).

Display of Classification and Gradients

```

1
2 x_min, x_max = X[:, 0].min() - 0.5, X[:, 0].max() + 0.5
3 y_min, y_max = X[:, 1].min() - 0.5, X[:, 1].max() + 0.5
4 xx, yy = torch.meshgrid(torch.linspace(x_min, x_max, 50),
5                           torch.linspace(y_min, y_max, 50),
6                           indexing='ij')
7
8 grid_points = torch.stack([xx.flatten(), yy.flatten()], dim=1)
9 grid_points.requires_grad = True
10
11 grid_preds = model(grid_points)
12 grid_preds.backward(torch.ones_like(grid_preds))
13 grid_grads = grid_points.grad.detach().numpy()
14
15 grad_magnitudes = np.linalg.norm(grid_grads, axis=1, keepdims=True)
16 grad_magnitudes = np.clip(grad_magnitudes, 1, 1000)
17 grid_grads /= grad_magnitudes
18
19 grid_grads_x = grid_grads[:, 0].reshape(xx.shape)
20 grid_grads_y = grid_grads[:, 1].reshape(xx.shape)
21 grid_preds_np = grid_preds.detach().numpy().reshape(xx.shape)
22
23 plt.figure(figsize=(7, 5))
24 plt.contourf(xx, yy, grid_preds_np, alpha=1, cmap="bwr")
25 plt.colorbar(label="Model Prediction Confidence")
26 plt.quiver(xx, yy, grid_grads_x, grid_grads_y, color="black", scale=20)
27 plt.xlabel("Feature 1")
28 plt.ylabel("Feature 2")
29 plt.title("Normalized Gradient Field and Decision Boundary")
30 plt.xlim(-2, 2)
31 plt.ylim(-2, 2)
32 plt.grid()

```

```
33 plt.savefig("points_classified_with_gradients.png")
34 plt.show()
```

This script computes model predictions over a uniform 50×50 grid, extracts gradients to analyze the sensitivity of the classifier, normalizes the gradients to limit their maximum size, uses contour plots to show the learned decision boundary, and overlays quiver arrows to indicate the gradient field.

Observations. The decision boundary adapts to the elliptical structures. The gradient arrows show where the model is most sensitive. Large gradients appear near the decision boundary, where small changes in input strongly impact classification.

The final visualization provides **deep insights into how the neural network classifies data**, demonstrating the potential of PyTorch's **autograd system** for analyzing decision boundaries.

Recommendation

AI/ML techniques provide a rather simple approach to solve a large variety of problems. How will physical arguments and further knowledge about the particular domain or problem under consideration enter the algorithmic approach and further discussion? There is a huge gap in domain specific input and how to combine it with generic approximation tools as given by AI/ML. We need to further develop the approaches we are using here.

Chapter 5

Neural Network Architectures

5.1 Feed Forward Networks

A Feed Forward Neural Network (FFNN) is the simplest type of artificial neural network. It consists of layers of neurons where each neuron in one layer is connected to every neuron in the next layer. The information moves in one direction—forward—from the input nodes through the hidden layers (if any) to the output nodes.

FFNNs are commonly used for tasks like regression and classification. A simple implementation in Python using PyTorch is shown below.

Feedforward Neural Network with Rainbow Layers

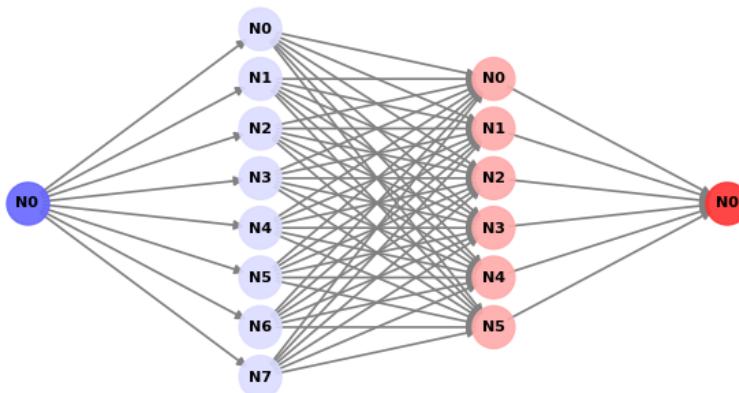


Figure 5.1: Visualization of a simple Feedforward Neural Network (FFNN) with one hidden layer. The input, hidden, and output layers are aligned from left to right, with connections representing weight relationships.

Feed Forward Network

```
1 import torch
2 import torch.nn as nn
3 import torch.optim as optim
```

```

4
5 # Define a deeper FFNN with two hidden layers
6 class FeedForwardNN(nn.Module):
7     def __init__(self, input_size, hidden_size1, hidden_size2, output_size):
8         super(FeedForwardNN, self).__init__()
9         self.fc1 = nn.Linear(input_size, hidden_size1)
10        self.relu1 = nn.ReLU()
11        self.fc2 = nn.Linear(hidden_size1, hidden_size2)
12        self.relu2 = nn.ReLU()
13        self.fc3 = nn.Linear(hidden_size2, output_size)
14
15    def forward(self, x):
16        x = self.fc1(x)
17        x = self.relu1(x)
18        x = self.fc2(x)
19        x = self.relu2(x)
20        x = self.fc3(x)
21
22        return x
23
24 # Create a model instance with 1 input, 8 neurons in the first hidden layer,
25 # 6 neurons in the second hidden layer, and 1 output
26 input_size, hidden_size1, hidden_size2, output_size = 1, 8, 6, 1
27 model = FeedForwardNN(input_size, hidden_size1, hidden_size2, output_size)
28
29 # Print model architecture
30 print(model)

```

A feedforward neural network (FFNN) consists of layers of interconnected neurons that transform input data into predictions. In this implementation, the network has an input layer with one neuron, two hidden layers with eight and six neurons, respectively, and an output layer with a single neuron. Each hidden layer applies a ReLU activation function to introduce non-linearity, enabling the model to learn complex relationships. The final output layer performs a linear transformation.

The weights and biases of the network are learned during training through backpropagation, minimizing a chosen loss function. PyTorch's 'nn.Linear' modules define fully connected layers, while the 'forward' method specifies how data flows through the network. The model instance is created with predefined input, hidden, and output dimensions, and printing it reveals its architecture.

We now use such a feedforward network to approximate a non-linear curve.

Learning a curve with FFNN

```

1 import torch
2 import torch.nn as nn
3 import torch.optim as optim
4 import numpy as np
5 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
6
7 # Set random seed & generate data: f(x) = 1 / (1 + exp(-tau * x + s))
8 torch.manual_seed(42); np.random.seed(42)

```

```

9 x = np.linspace(-2, 2, 500)
10 y = 1 / (1 + np.exp(-5 * x)) # tau = 5, s = 0
11 x_tensor = torch.tensor(x, dtype=torch.float32).unsqueeze(1)
12 y_tensor = torch.tensor(y, dtype=torch.float32).unsqueeze(1)
13
14 # Define a deeper FFNN
15 class DeepFFNN(nn.Module):
16     def __init__(self):
17         super().__init__()
18         self.fc1, self.fc2, self.fc3 = nn.Linear(1, 8), nn.Linear(8, 6), nn.Linear
19             (6, 1)
20     def forward(self, x): return self.fc3(torch.relu(self.fc2(torch.relu(self.fc1(
21         x))))))
22
23 model = DeepFFNN()
24 criterion = nn.MSELoss()
25 optimizer = optim.Adam(model.parameters(), lr=0.01)
26
27 # Training
28 loss_history = []
29 for epoch in range(2000):
30     optimizer.zero_grad()
31     y_pred = model(x_tensor)
32     loss = criterion(y_pred, y_tensor)
33     loss.backward()
34     optimizer.step()
35     loss_history.append(loss.item())
36     if (epoch + 1) % 500 == 0: print(f"Epoch {epoch+1}, Loss: {loss.item():.6f}")
37
38 # Generate predictions
39 with torch.no_grad(): y_pred_np = model(x_tensor).numpy()
40
41 # Plot function approximation & loss curve
42 fig, axes = plt.subplots(1, 2, figsize=(10, 3))
43 axes[0].plot(x, y, label="True", linewidth=2)
44 axes[0].plot(x, y_pred_np, "r--", label="NN Approx.", linewidth=2)
45 axes[0].set(title="Function Approximation", xlabel="x", ylabel="f(x)"); axes[0].
46     legend(); axes[0].grid()
47 axes[1].semilogy(loss_history, "r", label="Loss")
48 axes[1].set(title="Loss Curve", xlabel="Epochs", ylabel="MSE"); axes[1].legend();
49     axes[1].grid()
50 plt.savefig("deep_nn_results.png")
51 plt.show()

```

A computational graph visually represents how data flows through a neural network during a forward pass. In this example, we use the `torchviz` library to generate a graph of the feedforward neural network (FFNN). The input tensor is a randomly generated vector with the same dimensionality as the input layer. The forward pass computes the predicted output, which is then passed to `make_dot()` along with the model's parameters. The resulting graph shows the dependencies

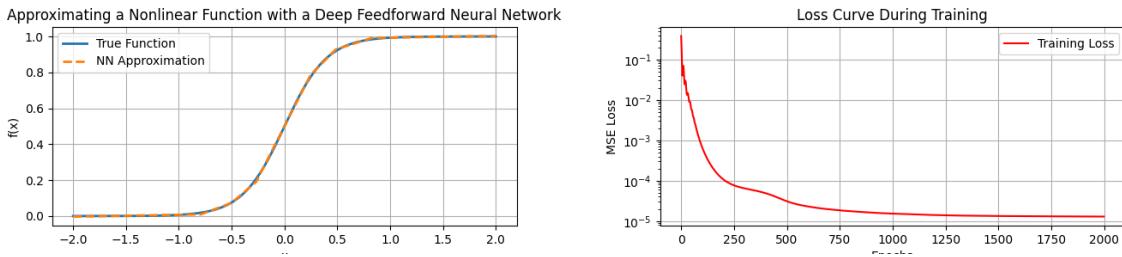


Figure 5.2: Left: Neural network approximation of the function $f(x) = \frac{1}{1+e^{-rx+s}}$. Right: Training loss curve over epochs, showing convergence of the model.

between layers and operations, helping to analyze the network structure and gradient flow.

Generating a Computational Graph

```

1 from torchviz import make_dot
2
3 # Sample input tensor (random data)
4 x = torch.randn(1, input_size) # One sample with 1 feature
5 y_pred = model(x) # Forward pass
6
7 # Create the computational graph
8 dot = make_dot(y_pred, params=dict(model.named_parameters()))
9
10 # Render the graph
11 dot.render("ffnn_graph", format="png", cleanup=True)
12 dot

```

Each box in the computational graph represents a tensor operation within the neural network. The nodes labeled **Addmm** correspond to the linear transformations performed by the `nn.Linear` layers, which compute matrix multiplications followed by bias addition. The **Relu** nodes apply the ReLU activation function, introducing non-linearity into the network.

The parameters of the network, such as weights and biases, are indicated separately and contribute to the forward computation. This visualization helps trace how data propagates through the layers and identifies where gradients will be computed during backpropagation.

In the computational graph, **Accumulated Grad** represents the storage of gradients during backpropagation. When computing the gradient of the loss with respect to model parameters, PyTorch accumulates these gradients in the `.grad` attribute of tensors, allowing optimization steps to adjust weights accordingly.

AddmmBackward corresponds to the backward operation of the **Addmm** function, which performs matrix multiplication followed by bias addition in the forward pass. During backpropagation, **Ad-dmmBackward** computes the gradients of the output with respect to both the input features and the weight matrices of the fully connected layers. These gradients are then accumulated and used for parameter updates during training.

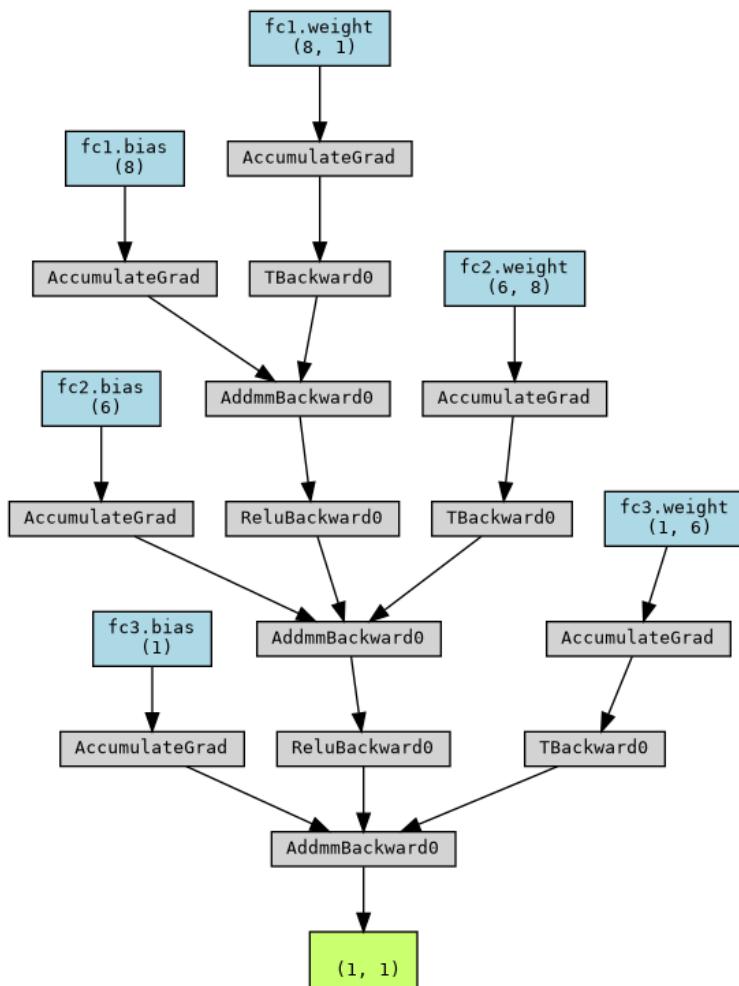


Figure 5.3: Computational graph of the feedforward neural network.

5.2 Graph Neural Networks

Graph Neural Networks (GNNs) are designed to work with graph-structured data. Unlike FFNNs, GNNs can capture relationships between different entities in a graph, making them useful in applications such as social network analysis, molecular property prediction, and recommendation systems.

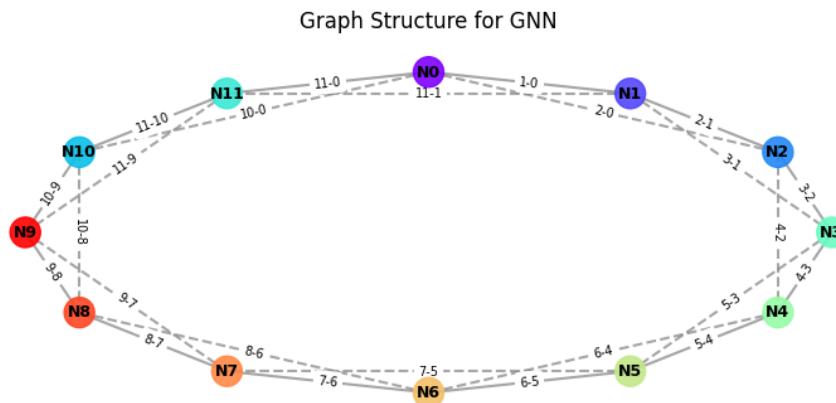


Figure 5.4: Graph visualization for the GNN model with periodic connectivity and elliptical node positions. The nodes are positioned on an ellipse, and the edges are displayed with two types: straight edges (direct neighbors) and periodic edges (non-direct neighbors).

A simple implementation using PyTorch Geometric is shown below. I could get this easily running on linux, on my windows wls, on colab and other frameworks, but on Windows it died regularly without error message. Seems to be a memory management problem.

Recommendation

Training with pytorch or pytorch lightning packages or any other current AI/ML software is characterized by frequent software updates. You will need to move along with the community in a timescale of month, packages get deprecated soon.

Graph Neural Network

```

1 import torch
2 import torch.nn as nn
3 import torch.nn.functional as F
4 from torch_geometric.nn import GCNConv
5 from torch_geometric.data import Data
6
7 # Define a GNN with 2 hidden layers
8 class GNNModel(nn.Module):
9     def __init__(self, num_features, hidden_channels, num_feats_y):
10         super().__init__()
11         self.conv1, self.conv2 = GCNConv(num_features, hidden_channels[0]),
12                                     GCNConv(hidden_channels[0], hidden_channels[1])

```

```

12         self.fc1, self.fc2 = nn.Linear(hidden_channels[1], hidden_channels[0]), nn
13             .Linear(hidden_channels[0], num_feats_y)
14
15     def forward(self, x, edge_index):
16         x = F.leaky_relu(self.conv1(x, edge_index))
17         x = F.leaky_relu(self.conv2(x, edge_index))
18         x = F.leaky_relu(self.fc1(x))
19         return self.fc2(x)
20
21 # Graph Configuration
22 nx, xa = 25, 10
23 x_grid = torch.linspace(0, xa, nx)
24 p1, p2 = torch.sin(2 * torch.pi * x_grid / xa), torch.cos(2 * torch.pi * x_grid /
25   xa)
26
27 # Create adjacency matrix & edge index
28 diff = torch.sqrt((p1.repeat(nx, 1).T - p1) ** 2 + (p2.repeat(nx, 1).T - p2) ** 2)
29 edge_index = (diff < 0.5).float().nonzero(as_tuple=False).t().contiguous()
30
31 # Create node features & labels
32 data = Data(x=torch.cat((p1.unsqueeze(1), p2.unsqueeze(1)), dim=1), y=torch.
33   randint(0, 2, (nx, 1)).float(), edge_index=edge_index)
34
35 # Initialize & print model
36 model = GNNModel(num_features=2, hidden_channels=[8, 16], num_feats_y=1)
37 print(model)

```

Here, the edge index is for each node given by its index (first row) it prescribes the connected node by index in the second row.

edge_index
<pre> 1 tensor([[0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 3, 3, 3, 3, 2 4, 4, 5, 5, 5, 5, 6, 6, 6, 6, 7, 7, 7, 7, 8, 8, 8, 8, 3 9, 9, 9, 9, 10, 10, 10, 10, 11, 11, 11, 11, 11, 11, 11], 4 [1, 2, 10, 11, 0, 2, 3, 11, 0, 1, 3, 4, 1, 2, 4, 5, 2, 3, 5 5, 6, 3, 4, 6, 7, 4, 5, 7, 8, 5, 6, 8, 9, 6, 7, 9, 10, 6 7, 8, 10, 11, 0, 8, 9, 11, 0, 1, 9, 10]]) </pre>

We finally show how we can learn the **advection** of functions by a the above graph neural network.

Training code
<pre> 1 import numpy as np 2 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt 3 import torch 4 import torch.nn as nn 5 import torch.nn.functional as F 6 import torch_geometric.data as geom_data </pre>

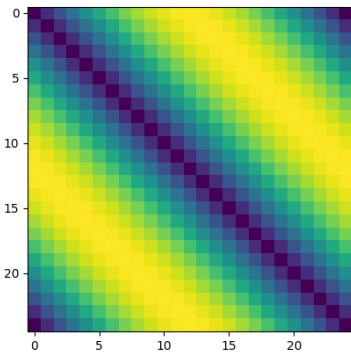


Figure 5.5: The difference matrix showing the distances between nodes in the graph. This matrix is used to determine the adjacency matrix, where the distance between nodes is calculated based on their positions in the space.

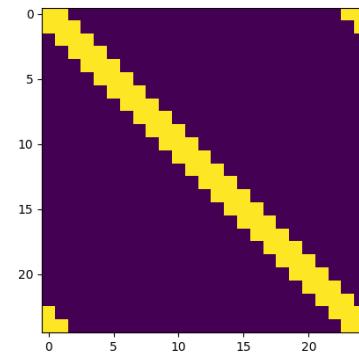


Figure 5.6: A binary adjacency matrix where edges are drawn between nodes whose distance is less than 0.5. This matrix is used to determine which nodes are directly connected in the graph.

```

7 import torch_geometric.nn as geom_nn
8
9 # Set random seed
10 torch.manual_seed(0)
11
12 # Define parameters
13 xa, nx, nt, v = 10, 25, 15, 0.6
14
15 # Create grid and function data
16 x_grid = np.linspace(0, xa, nx + 1)[:-1]
17 z = np.zeros([nt, nx])
18 for j in range(nt):
19     z[j, :] = np.sin((2 * np.pi / xa) * x_grid - v * j)
20
21 # Create adjacency matrix
22 p1 = np.sin(2 * np.pi * x_grid / xa)
23 p2 = np.cos(2 * np.pi * x_grid / xa)
24 p1m, p2m = np.tile(p1, (nx, 1)).T, np.tile(p2, (nx, 1)).T
25 diff = np.sqrt((p1m - p1m.T) ** 2 + (p2m - p2m.T) ** 2)
26 adjm = (diff < 0.5).astype(int)
27 edge_index = torch.tensor(np.nonzero(adjm), dtype=torch.long)
28
29 # Split data into training and testing
30 X_train, Y_train = z[:-1], z[1:]
31 X_test, Y_test = z[:-1], z[1:]
32
33 # Create feature tensors and data loader
34 features_tmp2 = torch.tensor(np.arange(1, nx + 1) / nx, dtype=torch.float).

```

```
        unsqueeze(1)
35 train_list, test_list = [], []
36 for k in range(X_train.shape[0]):
37     features_k_tmp1 = torch.tensor(X_train[k, :], dtype=torch.float).unsqueeze(1)
38     features_k = torch.cat((features_k_tmp1, features_tmp2), dim=1)
39     labels_k = torch.tensor(Y_train[k, :], dtype=torch.float).unsqueeze(1)
40     data = geom_data.Data(x=features_k, y=labels_k, edge_index=edge_index)
41     train_list.append(data)
42
43 for k in range(X_test.shape[0]):
44     features_k_tmp1 = torch.tensor(X_test[k, :], dtype=torch.float).unsqueeze(1)
45     features_k = torch.cat((features_k_tmp1, features_tmp2), dim=1)
46     labels_k = torch.tensor(Y_test[k, :], dtype=torch.float).unsqueeze(1)
47     data = geom_data.Data(x=features_k, y=labels_k, edge_index=edge_index)
48     test_list.append(data)
49
50 # Create DataLoaders for training and testing
51 train_loader = geom_data.DataLoader(train_list, batch_size=1, shuffle=True)
52 test_loader = geom_data.DataLoader(test_list, batch_size=1, shuffle=False)
53
54 # Define the GNN model
55 class GNNModel(nn.Module):
56     def __init__(self, num_features, hidden_channels, num_feats_y):
57         super(GNNModel, self).__init__()
58         self.conv1 = geom_nn.GCNConv(num_features, hidden_channels[0])
59         self.conv2 = geom_nn.GCNConv(hidden_channels[0], hidden_channels[1])
60         self.conv3 = geom_nn.GCNConv(hidden_channels[1], hidden_channels[2])
61         self.conv4 = geom_nn.GCNConv(hidden_channels[2], hidden_channels[3])
62         self.fc1 = nn.Linear(hidden_channels[3], hidden_channels[2])
63         self.fc2 = nn.Linear(hidden_channels[2], hidden_channels[0])
64         self.fc3 = nn.Linear(hidden_channels[0], num_feats_y)
65
66     def forward(self, x, edge_index):
67         x = F.leaky_relu(self.conv1(x, edge_index))
68         x = F.leaky_relu(self.conv2(x, edge_index))
69         x = F.leaky_relu(self.conv3(x, edge_index))
70         x = F.leaky_relu(self.conv4(x, edge_index))
71         x = F.leaky_relu(self.fc1(x))
72         x = F.leaky_relu(self.fc2(x))
73         return self.fc3(x)
74
75 # Initialize model, optimizer, and criterion
76 model = GNNModel(num_features=2, hidden_channels=[4 * nt, 4 * nt, 4 * nt, 4 * nt],
77                   num_feats_y=1)
78 optimizer = torch.optim.AdamW(model.parameters(), lr=0.0005, weight_decay=0)
79 criterion = nn.MSELoss()
80
81 # Training loop
82 epochs = 1500
```

```

82 train_mse, test_mse = [], []
83 for epoch in range(epochs):
84     model.train()
85     total_loss = 0.0
86     train_mse_tmp = []
87     for batch in train_loader:
88         optimizer.zero_grad()
89         output = model(batch.x, batch.edge_index)
90         loss = criterion(output, batch.y)
91         train_mse_tmp.append(loss.item())
92         loss.backward()
93         optimizer.step()
94     train_mse.append(np.mean(train_mse_tmp))
95
96     model.eval()
97     test_mse_tmp = []
98     for batch in test_loader:
99         y_pred = model(batch.x, batch.edge_index)
100        test_loss = criterion(y_pred, batch.y)
101        test_mse_tmp.append(test_loss.item())
102    test_mse.append(np.mean(test_mse_tmp))
103
104    if epoch % 100 == 0:
105        print(f'Epoch {epoch + 1}, Train Loss: {train_mse[epoch]}, Test Loss: {test_mse[epoch]}')
106
107 # Plot training and test MSE
108 plt.plot(np.arange(epochs), train_mse, '*', label='Train Loss')
109 plt.plot(np.arange(epochs), test_mse, '*', label='Test Loss')
110 plt.legend()
111 plt.title("Training and Test Loss")
112 plt.savefig("gnn_loss_curve.png")
113 plt.show()

```

Which comes with the loss curve

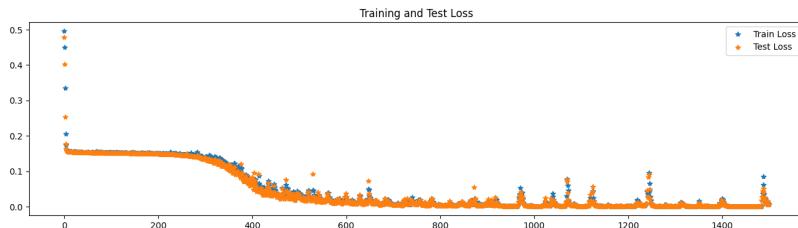


Figure 5.7: Training and Test Loss curves during the training process. The plot shows the Mean Squared Error (MSE) for both training and test sets across epochs.

Testing the translation we display two randomly chosen cases.

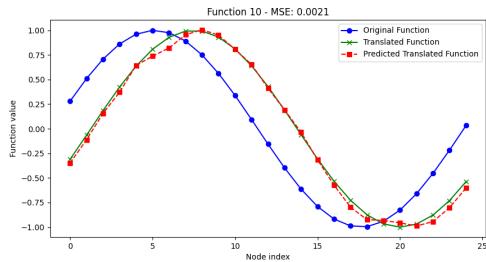


Figure 5.8: Comparison for Test Case 1: Original, Translated, and Predicted Translated Functions. The plot shows the original function, the translated function, and the model's prediction with MSE value.

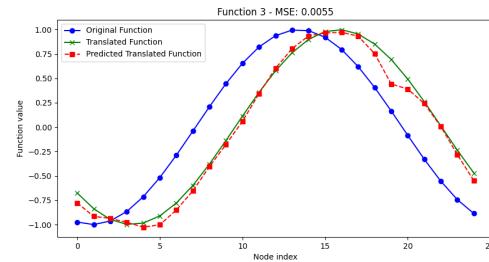


Figure 5.9: Comparison for Test Case 2: Original, Translated, and Predicted Translated Functions. This plot compares the same as Test Case 1 but for another random test case.

5.3 Applying Convolutional Neural Networks for Function Classification

Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs) are powerful architectures typically used for image processing but can also be applied to one-dimensional data such as time series or function classification. In this section, we demonstrate how to construct a simple CNN to classify different mathematical functions (e.g., sine, cosine, Gaussian, and polynomial functions).

Generating Synthetic Data. To train a CNN, we first need a dataset. We generate synthetic data using functions such as sine or cosine, polynomials and Gaussians with varying parameters such as frequency, phase shifts, and noise levels. The dataset consists of labeled samples representing different mathematical function types.

CNN Data generation

```

1 import torch
2 import torch.nn as nn
3 import torch.optim as optim
4 import numpy as np
5 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
6
7 def generate_function_data(num_samples=5000, num_points=50, err=0.02):
8     X = []
9     y = []
10    functions = ['sine-cosine', 'gaussian', 'polynomial']
11
12    for _ in range(num_samples):
13        x = np.linspace(-1, 1, num_points)
14        func_type = np.random.choice(functions)
15
16        # Initialize a default y_values to prevent UnboundLocalError
17        y_values = np.zeros(num_points)
18        label = -1

```

```
19
20     if func_type == 'sine-cosine':
21         freq = np.random.uniform(1, 5)
22         phase = np.random.uniform(0, 2 * np.pi)
23         amp = np.random.uniform(0.5, 2)
24         y_values = amp * np.sin(freq * np.pi * x + phase) + err * np.random.
randn(num_points)
25         label = 0
26
27     elif func_type == 'gaussian':
28         mu = np.random.uniform(-0.5, 0.5)
29         sigma = np.random.uniform(0.2, 0.5)
30         amp = np.random.uniform(0.5, 2)
31         y_values = amp * np.exp(-((x - mu) ** 2) / (2 * sigma ** 2)) + err *
np.random.randn(num_points)
32         label = 2
33
34     elif func_type == 'polynomial':
35         a = np.random.uniform(-2, 2)
36         b = np.random.uniform(-2, 2)
37         c = np.random.uniform(-3, 3)
38         d = np.random.uniform(-0.5, 0.5)
39         y_values = a * x**3 + b * x**2 + c * x + d + err * np.random.randn(
num_points)
40         label = 3
41
42     X.append(y_values)
43     y.append(label)
44
45     X = np.array(X).reshape(-1, 1, num_points) # Add channel dimension
46     y = np.array(y)
47
48     return torch.tensor(X, dtype=torch.float32), torch.tensor(y, dtype=torch.long)
49
50 # Generate a large training and test dataset with adjustable noise
51 X_train, y_train = generate_function_data(num_samples=10000, err=0.05) # Low
noise in training
52 X_test, y_test = generate_function_data(num_samples=2000, err=0.2) # Higher noise
in test set
53
54 print(f"Train Data Shape: {X_train.shape}, Train Labels Shape: {y_train.shape}")
55 print(f"Test Data Shape: {X_test.shape}, Test Labels Shape: {y_test.shape}")
56
57 plt.figure(figsize=(12, 3))
58 for i, idx in enumerate(torch.randperm(len(X_train))[:6]):
59     plt.subplot(1, 6, i + 1)
60     plt.plot(X_train[idx][0].cpu().numpy())
61     plt.title([y_train[idx].item()])
62     plt.xticks([]), plt.yticks([])
```

```

63
64 plt.tight_layout()
65 plt.savefig("cnn_data_samples.png", dpi=300)
66 plt.show()

```

Each function is sampled over a fixed range, and the noise level can be controlled via a parameter. The generated dataset is split into training and test sets.

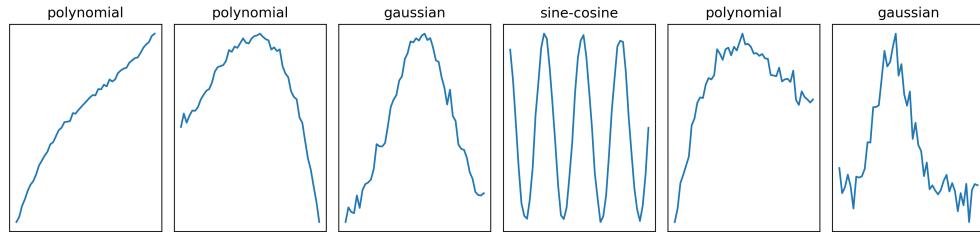


Figure 5.10: Example of generated function data samples

Defining the Convolutional Neural Network. The next step is defining the CNN. Our model consists of two convolutional layers, followed by a fully connected network that maps extracted features to class labels.

CNN Definition

```

1 import torch
2 import torch.nn as nn
3 import torch.optim as optim
4
5 class FunctionClassifierCNN(nn.Module):
6     def __init__(self):
7         super(FunctionClassifierCNN, self).__init__()
8         self.conv1 = nn.Conv1d(in_channels=1, out_channels=16, kernel_size=5,
9             stride=1, padding=2)
10        self.conv2 = nn.Conv1d(in_channels=16, out_channels=32, kernel_size=5,
11            stride=1, padding=2)
12        self.fc1 = nn.Linear(32 * 50, 128)
13        self.fc2 = nn.Linear(128, 4) # 4 classes
14
15    def forward(self, x):
16        x = torch.relu(self.conv1(x))
17        x = torch.relu(self.conv2(x))
18        x = x.view(x.shape[0], -1) # Flatten
19        x = torch.relu(self.fc1(x))
20        x = self.fc2(x)
21
22    return x
23
24 # Initialize model
25 model = FunctionClassifierCNN()
26 print(model)

```

The convolutional layers apply feature extraction by detecting local patterns in the input functions. The final classification is performed by a fully connected layer.

Training the CNN. The training process involves feeding the generated dataset into the CNN, computing loss using cross-entropy, and updating weights via backpropagation.

CNN Training

```

1 # Training setup
2 device = torch.device("cuda" if torch.cuda.is_available() else "cpu")
3 model.to(device)
4
5 criterion = nn.CrossEntropyLoss()
6 optimizer = optim.Adam(model.parameters(), lr=0.001)
7
8 num_epochs = 20
9 batch_size = 32
10
11 # Convert dataset into DataLoader
12 train_loader = torch.utils.data.DataLoader(list(zip(X_train, y_train)), batch_size
13     =batch_size, shuffle=True)
14
15 loss_history = [] # Store loss values
16
17 for epoch in range(num_epochs):
18     total_loss = 0
19     for batch_X, batch_y in train_loader:
20         batch_X, batch_y = batch_X.to(device), batch_y.to(device)
21         optimizer.zero_grad()
22         loss = criterion(model(batch_X), batch_y)
23         loss.backward()
24         optimizer.step()
25         total_loss += loss.item()
26
27     loss_history.append(total_loss / len(train_loader)) # Save epoch loss
28     print(f"Epoch {epoch+1}/{num_epochs}, Loss: {loss_history[-1]:.4f}")
29
30 # Plot training loss
31 fig=plt.figure(figsize=(10,5))
32 plt.plot(loss_history)
33 plt.xlabel("Epoch")
34 plt.ylabel("Loss")
35 plt.title("Training Loss")
36 plt.savefig("cnn_training_loss.png", dpi=300)
37 plt.show()

```

During training, we monitor the loss function to ensure the model is learning effectively.

Evaluating the Model. Once trained, the CNN is evaluated on the test dataset. Accuracy is computed to assess performance.

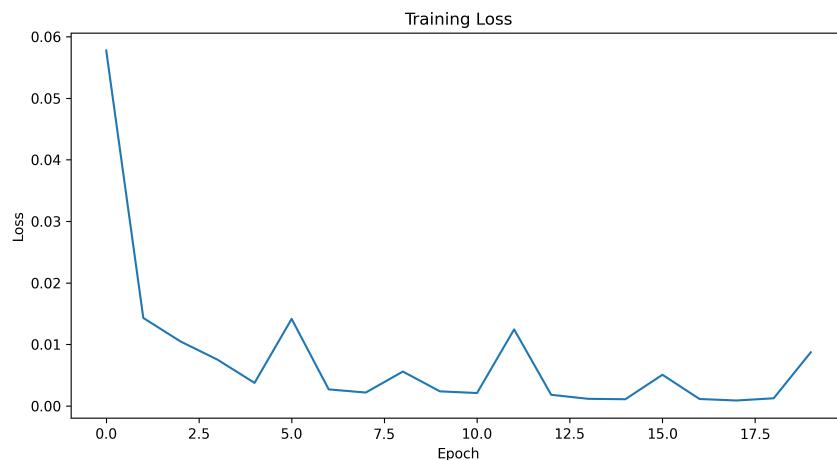


Figure 5.11: Training loss over epochs

CNN Evaluation

```

1 # Evaluation
2 model.eval()
3 test_loader = torch.utils.data.DataLoader(list(zip(X_test, y_test)), batch_size=
   batch_size, shuffle=False)
4
5 correct = 0
6 total = 0
7
8 with torch.no_grad():
9     for batch_X, batch_y in test_loader:
10         batch_X, batch_y = batch_X.to(device), batch_y.to(device)
11
12         outputs = model(batch_X)
13         _, predicted = torch.max(outputs, 1)
14
15         total += batch_y.size(0)
16         correct += (predicted == batch_y).sum().item()
17
18 accuracy = 100 * correct / total
19 print(f"Test Accuracy: {accuracy:.2f}%")

```

A high accuracy indicates the model successfully differentiates between different function types.

Visualizing Predictions. Finally, we visualize how well the model classifies unseen functions by plotting predicted and actual labels.

CNN Visualization

```

1 import random
2 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

```

```

3
4 # Generate a few test samples
5 num_examples = 12 # Show 12 examples
6 X_new, y_new = generate_function_data(num_samples=num_examples)
7 X_new = X_new.to(device)
8
9 # Get model predictions
10 model.eval()
11 with torch.no_grad():
12     predictions = model(X_new)
13     _, predicted_labels = torch.max(predictions, 1)
14
15 # Function names for visualization
16 func_names = ['Sine', 'Cosine', 'Gaussian', 'Polynomial']
17
18 # Plot the results
19 rows = num_examples // 4 # Show 4 per row
20 plt.figure(figsize=(12, 3 * rows))
21
22 for i in range(num_examples):
23     correct = predicted_labels[i] == y_new[i] # Check if prediction is correct
24     color = 'blue' if correct else 'red' # Blue for correct, red for incorrect
25
26     plt.subplot(rows, 4, i + 1)
27     plt.plot(np.linspace(-1, 1, 50), X_new[i].cpu().numpy().squeeze(), color=color,
28             label=f"Pred: {func_names[predicted_labels[i]]}")
29     plt.legend()
30     plt.title(f"True: {func_names[y_new[i]]}", color=color) # Color title for
31     extra clarity
32     plt.xticks([])
33     plt.yticks([])
34 plt.tight_layout()
35 plt.savefig("cnn_test_predictions.png", dpi=300)
36 plt.show()

```

By analyzing the correctly and incorrectly classified samples, we can gain insights into model performance and potential improvements.

We have shown an application of CNNs for function classification, covering data generation, model design, training, evaluation, and visualization. This approach can be extended to classify other types of structured signals.

5.4 LSTM-Based Anomaly Detection in Sensor Data

Recurrent Neural Networks (RNNs), specifically Long Short-Term Memory (LSTM) networks, are powerful for handling sequential data. Unlike traditional feedforward neural networks, LSTMs are designed to capture temporal dependencies by maintaining an internal memory that allows them to

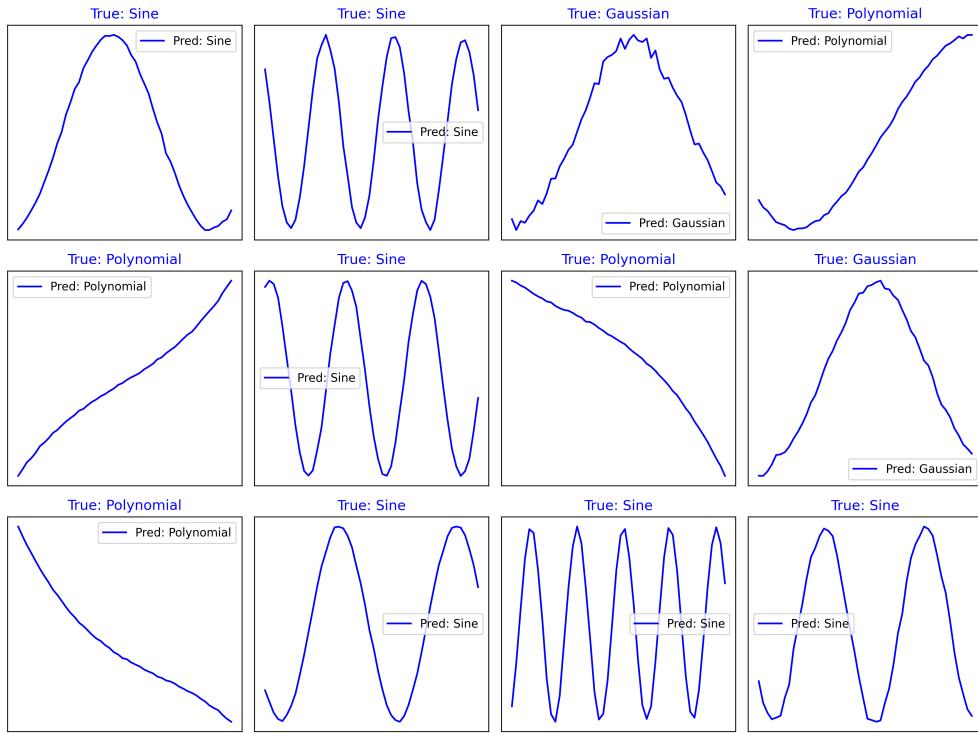


Figure 5.12: Correct (blue) and incorrect (red) predictions

remember relevant past information over long sequences. This makes them particularly suitable for anomaly detection in time series data, where deviations from learned patterns indicate potential anomalies.

An LSTM consists of a series of memory cells, each containing:

- An **input gate** that determines how much new information is added to the cell state.
- A **forget gate** that decides what past information should be discarded.
- An **output gate** that controls how much information from the memory cell is used as output.

By adjusting these gates, the LSTM can selectively retain or forget information, making it highly effective at modeling sequences with long-term dependencies.

Mathematical Formulation of LSTM. To be more precise, an LSTM unit consists of a cell state c_t and three gates: the input gate i_t , forget gate f_t , and output gate o_t . The key equations governing an LSTM cell at time step t are:

$$f_t = \sigma(W_f x_t + U_f h_{t-1} + b_f) \quad (5.1)$$

$$i_t = \sigma(W_i x_t + U_i h_{t-1} + b_i) \quad (5.2)$$

$$o_t = \sigma(W_o x_t + U_o h_{t-1} + b_o) \quad (5.3)$$

$$\tilde{c}_t = \tanh(W_c x_t + U_c h_{t-1} + b_c) \quad (5.4)$$

$$c_t = f_t \odot c_{t-1} + i_t \odot \tilde{c}_t \quad (5.5)$$

$$h_t = o_t \odot \tanh(c_t) \quad (5.6)$$

$$y_t = W_y h_t + b_y \quad (5.7)$$

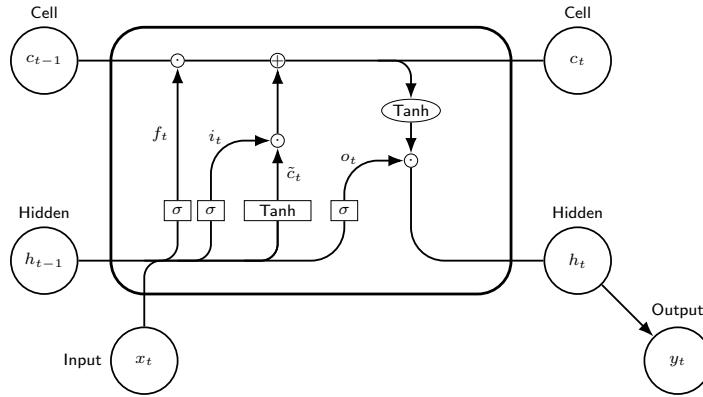


Figure 5.13: A sketch of the functionality of an LSTM cell, as described by the equations (5.1)-(5.7).

following [Convolutional LSTM Network: A Machine Learning Approach for Precipitation Nowcasting](#).

Here, $x_t \in \mathbb{R}^m$ represents the input at time step t , while $h_t \in \mathbb{R}^n$ is the hidden state, which encodes information from previous time steps. The memory cell $c_t \in \mathbb{R}^n$ maintains long-term dependencies, with its update governed by three gates: the forget gate f_t , which decides how much past information to retain, the input gate i_t , which determines how much new information to store, and the output gate o_t , which controls what is passed to the hidden state. The candidate cell state \tilde{c}_t contributes to updating c_t , using weight matrices W_c and U_c , and bias b_c .

The weight matrices $W_f, W_i, W_o, W_c \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$ process input connections, while $U_f, U_i, U_o, U_c \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ manage recurrent hidden state updates. Bias terms $b_f, b_i, b_o, b_c \in \mathbb{R}^n$ adjust the activation functions. The element-wise sigmoid function σ regulates gate activations, and the hyperbolic tangent function \tanh is used for both candidate state computation and final output transformation. Element-wise multiplication is denoted by \odot .

Output Computation. The final output y_t is computed as a linear transformation $W_y h_t + b_y$, where $W_y \in \mathbb{R}^{p \times n}$ maps the hidden state to an output space of dimension p , and $b_y \in \mathbb{R}^p$ is the corresponding bias. The interpretation of y_t depends on the application: in sequence classification, y_t is typically taken from the final time step; in sequence-to-sequence tasks, it is used at every time step; and in autoencoders, it reconstructs the original sequence.

By updating these gates at each time step, LSTMs effectively address the vanishing gradient problem, enabling the learning of long-term dependencies in sequential data.

In this section, we implement an LSTM-based autoencoder to detect anomalies in simulated sensor data. The autoencoder learns to reconstruct normal sequences, and anomalies are detected based on high reconstruction error.

Generating Sensor Data. To train the model, we generate synthetic sensor data using sine waves with random phase shifts. Anomalies are introduced as sudden deviations.

Generating Sensor Data

```
1 import numpy as np
2
```

```

3 # Generate normal sine wave data with random phase shift
4 def generate_sensor_data(num_samples=1000, seq_length=50, anomaly_ratio=0.1):
5     X = []
6     labels = []
7
8     for _ in range(num_samples):
9         phase_shift = np.random.uniform(0, 2 * np.pi) # Random shift
10        time_series = np.sin(np.linspace(0, 2 * np.pi, seq_length)) + phase_shift
11        + 0.1 * np.random.randn(seq_length)
12        label = 0 # Normal
13
14        # Inject anomalies
15        if np.random.rand() < anomaly_ratio:
16            time_series += np.random.uniform(-2, 2, size=seq_length) # Add large
17            spikes
18            label = 1 # Anomaly
19
20    X.append(time_series)
21    labels.append(label)
22
23 return np.array(X), np.array(labels)

```

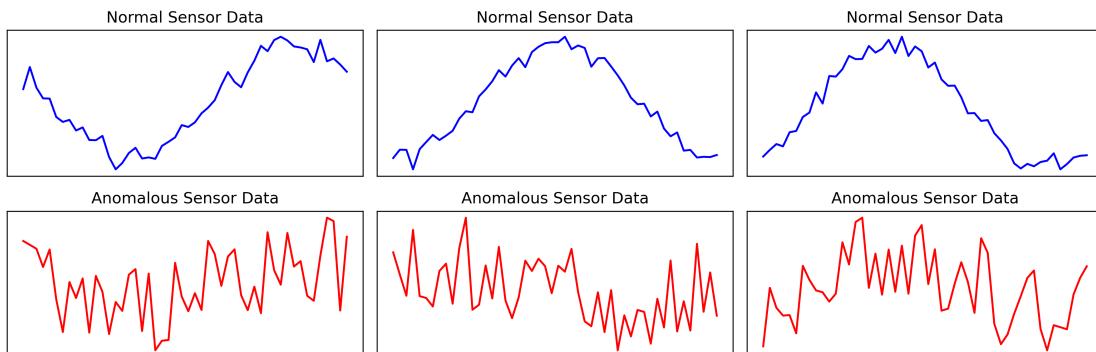


Figure 5.14: Examples of normal and anomalous sensor data. Normal sequences are in blue, while anomalies are shown in red.

Defining the LSTM Autoencoder. We define an LSTM autoencoder consisting of an encoder that compresses the input sequence into a lower-dimensional hidden state and a decoder that reconstructs the original sequence.

Defining the LSTM Autoencoder

```

1 import torch
2
3 # Define device for computation (CPU/GPU)
4 device = torch.device("cuda" if torch.cuda.is_available() else "cpu")
5
6 class LSTMAutoencoder(nn.Module):

```

```

7   def __init__(self, input_dim=1, hidden_dim=32, num_layers=2, seq_length=50):
8       super(LSTMAutoencoder, self).__init__()
9       self.seq_length = seq_length
10      self.hidden_dim = hidden_dim
11      self.num_layers = num_layers
12
13      # LSTM layers
14      self.encoder = nn.LSTM(input_dim, hidden_dim, num_layers, batch_first=True)
15      self.decoder = nn.LSTM(input_dim, hidden_dim, num_layers, batch_first=True)
16
17      # Final layer to reconstruct input
18      self.output_layer = nn.Linear(hidden_dim, input_dim)
19
20  def forward(self, x):
21      batch_size = x.size(0)
22
23      # Encode input
24      _, (hidden, cell) = self.encoder(x) # Correct hidden state extraction
25
26      # Initialize decoder input as zeros
27      decoder_input = torch.zeros(batch_size, self.seq_length, 1).to(x.device)
28
29      # Decode using the last hidden state from the encoder
30      decoder_output, _ = self.decoder(decoder_input, (hidden, cell))
31
32      # Apply final layer to match original input size
33      x_reconstructed = self.output_layer(decoder_output)
34
35      return x_reconstructed # Shape: [batch_size, seq_length, input_dim]
36
37 # Initialize model with correct sequence length
38 model = LSTMAutoencoder(seq_length=50).to(device)

```

Training the Model. The model is trained using Mean Squared Error (MSE) loss, optimizing the ability to reconstruct normal sequences.

Training the Model

```

1 # Training setup
2 criterion = nn.MSELoss()
3 optimizer = optim.Adam(model.parameters(), lr=0.001)
4 num_epochs = 50
5 batch_size = 32
6
7 train_loader = torch.utils.data.DataLoader(X_train, batch_size=batch_size, shuffle
     =True)
8
9 # Track loss history
10 loss_history = []

```

```

11
12 # Training loop
13 for epoch in range(num_epochs):
14     total_loss = 0
15     for batch in train_loader:
16         batch = batch.to(device)
17         optimizer.zero_grad()
18         outputs = model(batch)
19         loss = criterion(outputs, batch) # Compare input and output
20         loss.backward()
21         optimizer.step()
22         total_loss += loss.item()
23
24     epoch_loss = total_loss / len(train_loader)
25     loss_history.append(epoch_loss) # Store epoch loss
26     print(f"Epoch {epoch+1}/{num_epochs}, Loss: {epoch_loss:.4f}")
27
28 plt.plot(loss_history, label="Loss")
29 plt.xlabel("Epochs"), plt.ylabel("Loss"), plt.title("LSTM Training Loss")
30 plt.legend(), plt.grid(True)
31 plt.savefig("lstm_training_loss.png", dpi=300)
32 plt.show()

```

Detecting Anomalies. Anomalies are detected by computing the reconstruction error on test sequences. If the error exceeds a predefined threshold (e.g., 95th percentile), the sequence is classified as an anomaly.

Anomaly Detection

```

1 import numpy as np
2
3 # Compute reconstruction error on test data
4 model.eval()
5 X_test = X_test.to(device)
6 with torch.no_grad():
7     X_reconstructed = model(X_test)
8
9 reconstruction_errors = torch.mean((X_test - X_reconstructed) ** 2, dim=(1, 2)) .
    cpu().numpy()
10
11 # Set anomaly threshold (e.g., 95th percentile)
12 threshold = np.percentile(reconstruction_errors, 95)
13 y_pred = (reconstruction_errors > threshold).astype(int) # 1 if anomaly, else 0
14
15 # Compute detection accuracy
16 accuracy = np.mean(y_pred == y_test) * 100
17 print(f"Anomaly Detection Accuracy: {accuracy:.2f}%")

```

In our case we got

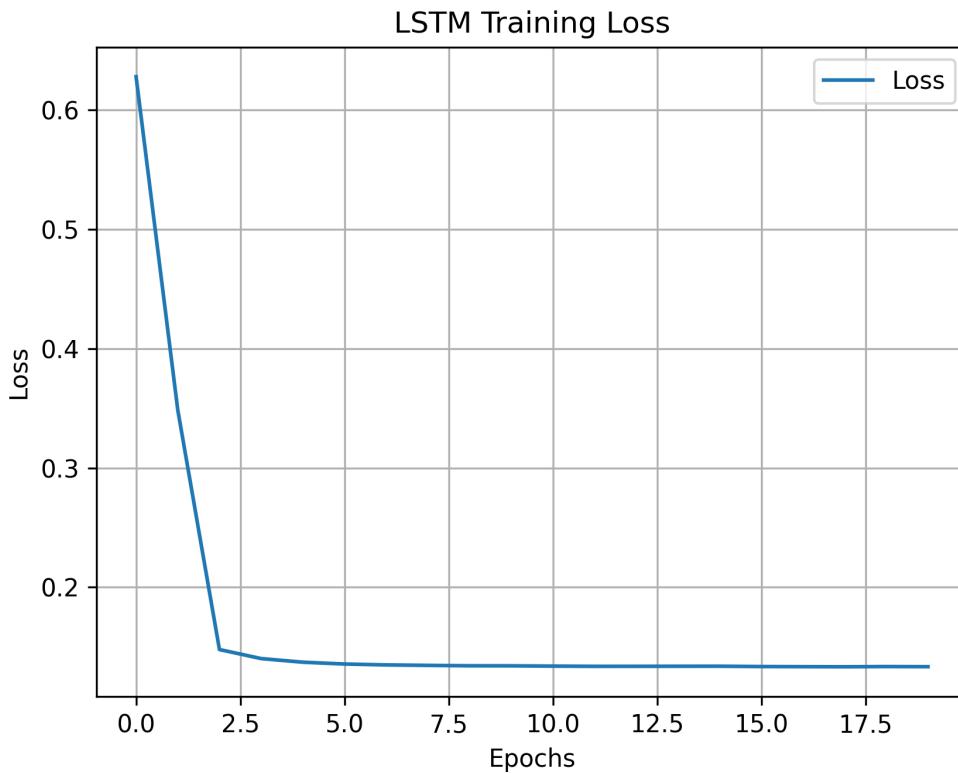


Figure 5.15: Training loss curve showing the decrease in reconstruction error over epochs.

Anomaly Detection Accuracy: 96.25%

Visualizing Detected Anomalies. We randomly sample 12 sequences from the test set, classify them, and color them accordingly—blue for normal and red for anomalies.

Visualizing Anomalies

```
1 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
2
3 # Select 12 random test samples
4 num_samples = 12
5 indices = np.random.choice(len(X_test), num_samples, replace=False)
6
7 # Compute reconstruction errors
8 model.eval()
9 with torch.no_grad():
10     X_reconstructed = model(X_test.to(device))
11
12 reconstruction_errors = torch.mean((X_test - X_reconstructed) ** 2, dim=(1, 2)).cpu().numpy()
13
14 # Detect anomalies based on threshold
```

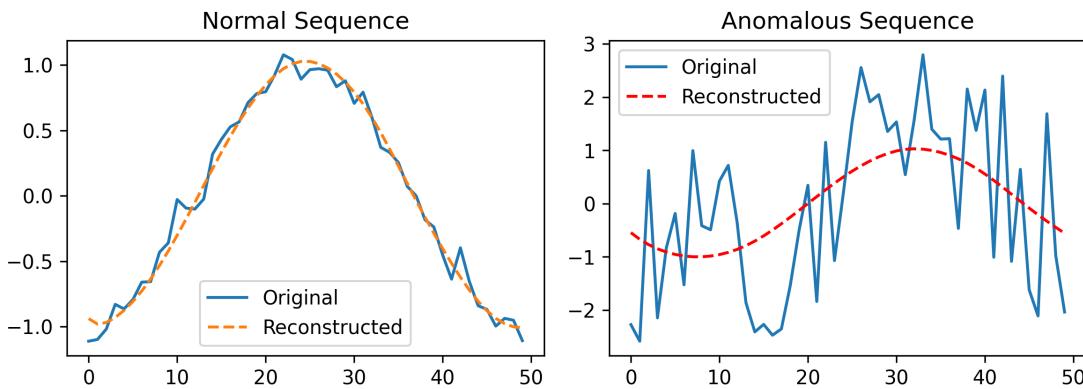


Figure 5.16: Example of normal (left) and anomalous (right) sequences. Dashed lines represent reconstructed sequences.

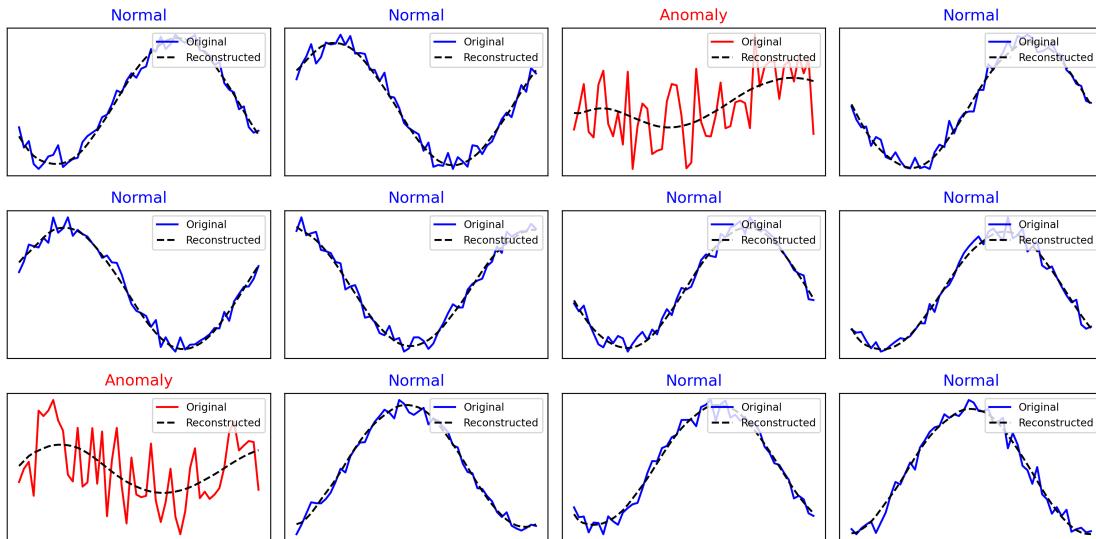


Figure 5.17: Illustration of the detection and correction of the sensor anomaly.

```

15 threshold = np.percentile(reconstruction_errors, 90)
16 y_pred = (reconstruction_errors > threshold).astype(int) # 1 = Anomaly, 0 =
    Normal
17
18 # Plot the selected samples
19 plt.figure(figsize=(12, 6))
20 for i, idx in enumerate(indices):
21     color = 'red' if y_pred[idx] == 1 else 'blue'
22
23     plt.subplot(3, 4, i + 1)
24     plt.plot(X_test[idx].cpu().numpy(), color=color, label="Original")
25     plt.plot(X_reconstructed[idx].cpu().numpy(), linestyle="dashed", color="black",
              label="Reconstructed")

```

```
26     plt.title(f"'Anomaly' if y_pred[idx] == 1 else 'Normal'", color=color)
27     plt.xticks([]), plt.yticks([])
28     plt.legend(fontsize=8, loc="upper right")
29
30 plt.tight_layout()
31 plt.savefig("lstm_anomaly_detection_samples_selected.png", dpi=300)
32 plt.show()
```

Recommendation

There are quite different architectures of neural networks. The connectivity is a crucial choice for the functionality of the network. But also training datasets and optimisation strategies determine the success or failure of the network functionality and quality.

Recommendation

There is not one good or bad network or architecture, but different approaches are good for different applications.

Chapter 6

Large Language Models

6.1 LLM Network as Sequence-to-Sequence Machines via Transformer Models

At their core, Large Language Models (LLMs) are sequence-to-sequence machines that generate a response sequence given an input sequence of words, converted into tokens. However, the way they process and generate these sequences involves several layers of complexity:

1. Contextual Understanding via Self-Attention

Unlike simple sequence models (e.g., RNNs), Transformers use self-attention to consider all tokens in a sequence simultaneously. This allows them to capture dependencies across long contexts.

2. Probability-Based Token Generation

At each step, the model predicts the next token by computing a probability distribution over the vocabulary. The output sequence is formed by sampling or selecting the most probable token at each step.

3. Task-Specific Adaptations

- **Text Generation** (GPT, LLaMA, Mistral): Autoregressive models predict one token at a time, conditioning each step on previous outputs.
- **Text Understanding** (BERT): Masked language models predict missing tokens given bidirectional context.
- **Instruction-Tuned Models** (ChatGPT, Claude): Fine-tuned on dialogue and instruction-following data, allowing multi-turn interactions.

So, while LLMs fundamentally map an input sequence to an output sequence, their real power comes from how they encode context, manage dependencies, and adapt to various tasks through fine-tuning and prompting.

Large Language Models (LLMs) have revolutionized natural language processing (NLP) through the use of Transformer architectures. Introduced by Vaswani et al. in 2017, Transformers have

surpassed previous recurrent and convolutional models in both efficiency and scalability. Let us give a quick overview of Transformer architectures and their role in modern LLMs.

The Transformer model is based on the self-attention mechanism and is composed of an encoder-decoder structure. However, most LLMs, such as GPT and BERT, utilize only the encoder or decoder portion.

Self-attention processes an input sequence of n tokens, where each token represents a word or subword from a given text. The input is converted into a numerical representation in three steps.

First, the input sentence is tokenized using a tokenizer such as WordPiece or Byte-Pair Encoding. For example, the sentence:

"write code for problem a"

is split into the tokens:

{write, code, for, problem, a}

resulting in $n = 5$ tokens.

Each token is then mapped to a high-dimensional vector using a learned embedding matrix $E \in \mathbb{R}^{V \times d_{\text{model}}}$, where: - V is the vocabulary size. - d_{model} is the embedding dimension.

The input sequence is represented as a matrix:

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_{\text{model}}},$$

where each row $x_i \in \mathbb{R}^{1 \times d_{\text{model}}}$ corresponds to the embedding of a token.

Positional Encoding: Since Transformers lack an inherent sequence structure, a **positional encoding matrix** $P \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_{\text{model}}}$ is added:

$$X_{\text{final}} = X + P,$$

where: P is a matrix containing position-specific values that help encode the order of tokens and each row $P_i \in \mathbb{R}^{1 \times d_{\text{model}}}$ corresponds to the positional encoding for the i -th token. The positional encoding matrix $P \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_{\text{model}}}$ is defined using sinusoidal functions, where each element is computed as

$$P_{(i,2j)} = \sin\left(\frac{i}{10000^{2j/d_{\text{model}}}}\right), \quad P_{(i,2j+1)} = \cos\left(\frac{i}{10000^{2j/d_{\text{model}}}}\right),$$

with i representing the token position and j the dimension index. The resulting matrix X_{final} is then passed to the self-attention mechanism, where each token can attend to all others. This allows the model to differentiate between identical words appearing in different positions within the sequence. The resulting matrix X_{final} is the input to the self-attention mechanism, where each token can attend to all others.

This processed matrix X_{final} serves as the input to the self-attention mechanism, where each token can attend to all other tokens in the sequence. For each token, three matrices project its embedding into three key representations:

- **Query matrix** $Q \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_k}$
- **Key matrix** $K \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_k}$
- **Value matrix** $M \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_v}$

These matrices are obtained from the input embedding matrix $X \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_{\text{model}}}$ through learned weight matrices W^Q , W^K , and W^M :

$$Q = XW^Q, \quad K = XW^K, \quad M = XW^M, \quad (6.1)$$

where $W^Q, W^K \in \mathbb{R}^{d_{\text{model}} \times d_k}$ and $W^M \in \mathbb{R}^{d_{\text{model}} \times d_v}$ are learnable parameter matrices.

The attention scores are computed using the scaled dot-product attention:

$$\text{Attention}(Q, K, M) = \text{softmax} \left(\frac{QK^T}{\sqrt{d_k}} \right) M. \quad (6.2)$$

The softmax function is applied to each row of a matrix $S \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$, where each element is transformed as:

$$\text{softmax}(S)_{ij} = \frac{\exp(S_{ij})}{\sum_{k=1}^n \exp(S_{ik})}.$$

This ensures that for each row i , the values satisfy:

$$\sum_{j=1}^n \text{softmax}(S)_{ij} = 1,$$

converting the attention scores into a probability distribution across all tokens. Since $Q \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_k}$ and $K^T \in \mathbb{R}^{d_k \times n}$, the matrix product QK^T results in an attention score matrix of shape $\mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$. After applying the softmax function row-wise, the resulting matrix is multiplied by $V \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_v}$, producing the final output

$$\text{Attention}(Q, K, M) \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_v}.$$

We summarize:

- $QK^T \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ computes similarity scores between all tokens.
- The scaling factor $\sqrt{d_k}$ prevents large values inside the softmax function.
- The softmax function normalizes the similarity scores.

Multi-Head Attention: Instead of using a single attention mechanism, Transformers employ multiple attention heads to capture different aspects of the input. Given an input sequence $X \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_{\text{model}}}$,

multiple projections of Q, K, M are computed for each attention head. Each head with index i applies self-attention independently using separate weight matrices:

$$Q_i = XW_i^Q, \quad K_i = XW_i^K, \quad M_i = XW_i^M, \quad (6.3)$$

where

$$W_i^Q, W_i^K \in \mathbb{R}^{d_{\text{model}} \times d_k}, \quad W_i^M \in \mathbb{R}^{d_{\text{model}} \times d_v}$$

are learnable weight matrices for each head. Self-attention is then computed for each head as:

$$\text{head}_i = \text{Attention}(Q_i, K_i, M_i), \quad (6.4)$$

with $\text{head}_i \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_v}$. The outputs of all h heads are then concatenated:

$$\text{MultiHead}(Q, K, M) = \text{Concat}(\text{head}_1, \dots, \text{head}_h)W^O, \quad (6.5)$$

where $W^O \in \mathbb{R}^{hd_v \times d_{\text{model}}}$ is a learned projection matrix that maps the concatenated outputs back to the model's hidden dimension d_{model} . The final output has the shape:

$$\text{MultiHead}(Q, K, M) \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_{\text{model}}}.$$

Loss Function for Attention: The self-attention mechanism is trained by minimizing a loss function that measures the discrepancy between the model's predictions and the target outputs. Given an input sequence X and corresponding ground truth output Y , the model produces an output representation Z from self-attention:

$$Z = \text{Attention}(Q, K, M) = \text{softmax}\left(\frac{QK^T}{\sqrt{d_k}}\right)M.$$

For multi-head attention, the output is:

$$Z = \text{MultiHead}(Q, K, M) = \text{Concat}(\text{head}_1, \dots, \text{head}_h)W^O.$$

In a sequence-to-sequence task, such as machine translation, the model processes an input sequence and generates an output sequence token by token. The loss function measures how well the predicted probability distribution over the vocabulary matches the ground truth sequence.

Output Projection to Vocabulary: Since the output of self-attention and multi-head attention is a sequence representation matrix $Z \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times d_{\text{model}}}$, it must be mapped to a probability distribution over the vocabulary. This is done using a learned output weight matrix $W_{\text{out}} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_{\text{model}} \times V}$ and a bias term $b_{\text{out}} \in \mathbb{R}^V$, where V is the vocabulary size. The transformation is performed as follows:

$$Z_{\text{logits}} = ZW_{\text{out}} + b_{\text{out}},$$

resulting in $Z_{\text{logits}} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times V}$, where each row represents a raw score (logit) over all possible vocabulary words for the corresponding input token.

Converting Logits to Probabilities: Since Z_{logits} contains unnormalized scores, we apply the softmax function row-wise to obtain a valid probability distribution:

$$Z_{\text{pred}} = \text{softmax}(Z_{\text{logits}}),$$

where $Z_{\text{pred}} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times V}$ and each row is a probability distribution over the vocabulary, summing to 1.

Comparison with Ground Truth: Given a sequence of true output tokens $Y = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)$, where each y_t is an integer index in the vocabulary, we define the corresponding one-hot encoded matrix:

$$Z_Y \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times V},$$

where each row $Z_{Y,t}$ is a one-hot vector (in mathematical terms a unity vector e_{i_t} with position i_t for the word in the vocabulary) indicating the correct token at position t . Since Z_Y is one-hot, we extract the predicted probability assigned to the correct token i_t at each position t :

$$P_t = Z_{\text{pred},t,i_t}.$$

Cross-Entropy Loss: The loss function measures the model's ability to assign high probability to the correct next token. It is computed as:

$$\mathcal{L} = - \sum_{t=1}^n \log P_t,$$

where we note that P_t is between 0 and 1, such that larger P_t corresponds to lower \mathcal{L} . This ensures that if the model assigns low probability to the correct token, the loss is high, guiding the optimization process to improve predictions.

Training with Gradient Descent: The loss gradients are computed with respect to all learnable parameters, including the attention weight matrices and the output projection:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W^Q}, \quad \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W^K}, \quad \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W^V}, \quad \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W^O}, \quad \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W_{\text{out}}}.$$

The parameters are updated using gradient-based optimization methods such as Adam:

$$W^Q \leftarrow W^Q - \eta \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W^Q}, \quad W^K \leftarrow W^K - \eta \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W^K}, \quad W^V \leftarrow W^V - \eta \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W^V}, \quad W_{\text{out}} \leftarrow W_{\text{out}} - \eta \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W_{\text{out}}}.$$

where η is the learning rate. The optimization process is repeated for multiple input-output pairs to gradually improve the model's predictions.

Popular LLMs include:

- **BERT** (Bidirectional Encoder Representations from Transformers) - Uses the encoder stack for contextual embeddings.
- **GPT** (Generative Pretrained Transformer) - Uses the decoder stack for autoregressive text generation.
- **T5** (Text-to-Text Transfer Transformer) - Converts all NLP tasks into a text-to-text format.

6.2 Implementing and Training a Simple Transformer-Based LLM

In the previous section, we explored the fundamental concepts behind self-attention, multi-head attention, and how transformers process sequences. We now implement a simple transformer-based language model (LLM) in PyTorch to demonstrate these principles in practice.

Transformers process input sequences by first embedding tokens into high-dimensional vectors and then refining these representations through multiple layers of self-attention and feedforward transformations. The model is trained to predict the next token in a sequence, adjusting its parameters using gradient descent.

This section provides a practical walkthrough of implementing a transformer-based LLM, covering:

- The core components of a transformer, including positional encoding and self-attention.
- The forward pass of a transformer model applied to text.
- Training the model on a small dataset.
- Using the trained model to generate text.

We begin by defining a simple transformer model using PyTorch, followed by data preprocessing, training, and text generation.

Simple Transformer for Text Processing

```

1 import torch
2 import torch.nn as nn
3 import math
4
5 # Define the Positional Encoding
6 class PositionalEncoding(nn.Module):
7     def __init__(self, d_model, max_len=5000):
8         super(PositionalEncoding, self).__init__()
9         pe = torch.zeros(max_len, d_model)
10        position = torch.arange(0, max_len, dtype=torch.float).unsqueeze(1)
11        div_term = torch.exp(torch.arange(0, d_model, 2).float() * (-math.log(
12            10000.0) / d_model))
13        pe[:, 0::2] = torch.sin(position * div_term)
14        pe[:, 1::2] = torch.cos(position * div_term)
15        pe = pe.unsqueeze(0).transpose(0, 1)
16        self.register_buffer('pe', pe)
17
18    def forward(self, x):
19        return x + self.pe[:x.size(0), :]
20
21 # Define the Transformer Block
22 class TransformerBlock(nn.Module):
23     def __init__(self, d_model, num_heads, d_ff):
24         super(TransformerBlock, self).__init__()
25         self.attention = nn.MultiheadAttention(d_model, num_heads)
26         self.norm1 = nn.LayerNorm(d_model)
27         self.norm2 = nn.LayerNorm(d_model)
28         self.ff = nn.Sequential(
29             nn.Linear(d_model, d_ff),
30             nn.ReLU(),
31             nn.Linear(d_ff, d_model)
32         )

```

```

32
33     def forward(self, x):
34         attn_out, _ = self.attention(x, x, x)
35         x = self.norm1(x + attn_out)
36         x = self.norm2(x + self.ff(x))
37         return x
38
39 # Define the Transformer Model
40 class SimpleTransformer(nn.Module):
41     def __init__(self, d_model, num_heads, num_layers, vocab_size, max_len, d_ff
=2048):
42         super(SimpleTransformer, self).__init__()
43         self.embedding = nn.Embedding(vocab_size, d_model)
44         self.positional_encoding = PositionalEncoding(d_model, max_len)
45         self.layers = nn.ModuleList([TransformerBlock(d_model, num_heads, d_ff)
for _ in range(num_layers)])
46         self.fc_out = nn.Linear(d_model, vocab_size)
47
48     def forward(self, x):
49         x = self.embedding(x)
50         x = self.positional_encoding(x)
51         for layer in self.layers:
52             x = layer(x)
53         return self.fc_out(x)
54
55 # Example usage
56 model = SimpleTransformer(d_model=32, num_heads=2, num_layers=2, vocab_size=56,
max_len=6)
57 print(model)

```

6.2.1 Setting Up, Training, and Using Our Simple LLM

To train and use our simple transformer-based LLM, we will:

1. Define a small vocabulary and dataset
2. Preprocess the data
3. Train the model
4. Generate text using the trained model

Defining a Small Vocabulary and Dataset

We use a simple vocabulary with a set of basic sentences for training.

Define Vocabulary and Dataset

```

1 vocab = {1: "I", 2: "am", 3: "hungry", ..., 55: "was"}
2 sentences = [
3     "I am hungry",
4     "you are tired",
5     "we are happy",
6     "they are sad",

```

```

7     "it is simple",
8     "the weather is nice",
9 ]

```

Preprocessing Data

Tokenizing and padding sentences for training.

Tokenization and Padding

```

1 def tokenize_sentence(sentence, vocab):
2     return [key for word in sentence.split() for key, value in vocab.items() if
3             value == word]
4
5 def pad_sequence(seq, max_len, pad_value=0):
6     return seq + [pad_value] * (max_len - len(seq)) if len(seq) < max_len else seq
7 [:max_len]

```

Training the Model

Now, we train the transformer model using a simple training loop.

Train the Transformer

```

1 import torch.optim as optim
2
3 model = SimpleTransformer(d_model=32, num_heads=2, num_layers=2, vocab_size=56,
4                           max_len=6)
5 criterion = nn.CrossEntropyLoss(ignore_index=0)
6 optimizer = optim.Adam(model.parameters(), lr=0.001)
7
8 def train(model, dataloader, epochs=101):
9     model.train()
10    for epoch in range(epochs):
11        total_loss = 0
12        for x, y in dataloader:
13            optimizer.zero_grad()
14            output = model(x)
15            loss = criterion(output.view(-1, 56), y.view(-1))
16            loss.backward()
17            optimizer.step()
18            total_loss += loss.item()
19        if epoch % 100 == 0:
20            print(f"Epoch {epoch+1}, Loss: {total_loss/len(dataloader):.4f}")
21    train(model, dataloader)

```

Generating Text with the Trained Model

We generate sentences by feeding input sequences into the trained model.

Generate Text

```

1 def generate_text(model, seed_seq, max_length=6):
2     model.eval()
3     with torch.no_grad():
4         seq = seed_seq.clone()
5         for _ in range(max_length - len(seq)):
6             output = model(seq.unsqueeze(0))
7             next_token = torch.argmax(output[:, -1, :], dim=-1)
8             seq = torch.cat([seq, next_token], dim=0)
9     return seq
10
11 # Example generation
12 seed = torch.tensor([1, 2])  # "I am"
13 output_seq = generate_text(model, seed)
14 print("Generated Sequence:", output_seq.tolist())

```

This section provides a fundamental workflow for setting up, training, and using a simple transformer-based LLM.

To train a large-scale language model (LLM), the process extends beyond a simple dataset and model architecture. Large LLMs require vast amounts of text data, often consisting of terabytes of diverse sources such as books, articles, and web content. Instead of training on small, manually defined vocabularies, modern LLMs utilize subword tokenization techniques, such as SentencePiece or Byte-Pair Encoding (BPE), to handle open-ended vocabulary sizes efficiently.

The model itself is composed of billions of parameters, requiring parallelized training across multiple GPUs or TPUs using techniques such as model parallelism and pipeline parallelism. The optimization process involves advanced gradient accumulation, mixed-precision training for efficiency, and adaptive optimizers like AdamW.

Additionally, large-scale training requires extensive pretraining followed by task-specific fine-tuning, ensuring both general language understanding and domain-specific capabilities. Due to the computational scale, training an LLM can take weeks or months on dedicated high-performance clusters.

Training large-scale language models (LLMs) requires immense computational resources, typically measured in GPU hours. For example,

- GPT-3 (175 billion parameters) was trained on approximately 3640 petaflop-days, which translates to roughly 10 million GPU hours on NVIDIA V100 GPUs.
- More recent models, such as GPT-4 and PaLM-2, likely required even higher computational budgets, often exceeding 20–30 million GPU hours.

In contrast, a high-performance supercomputer like HOREKA at KIT, which features NVIDIA A100 GPUs, delivers a peak performance of around 17 petaflops for AI workloads. Assuming an efficient utilization of HOREKA's full AI capacity, training a model like GPT-3 would take several months,

whereas dedicated large-scale clusters, such as those used by OpenAI or Google, can parallelize the workload across thousands of GPUs, reducing training time to a few weeks. This illustrates the sheer scale of computational power needed for modern LLM training compared to even high-end academic supercomputers.

Recommendation

Training a LLM to achieve very high quality is a major task, which needs a lot of resources both in terms of preparation as well as computing power. However, this effort is invested today by a growing number of actors on an international scale. Using and finetuning models is already very easy and will become more feasible, with LLM functionality becoming ubiquitous already now. Focus on modularly leveraging the growing potential of LLM intelligence combining it with your applications and services.

6.3 Install Your Own LLM, Chat with it and Develop Applications

Several open-source frameworks allow users to install and run large language models (LLMs) on local machines or servers without requiring proprietary cloud-based solutions.

- One of the most user-friendly tools is `ollama`, which provides a streamlined interface for running optimized LLMs on consumer hardware with GPU acceleration.
- Other notable frameworks include `LM Studio`, which offers a graphical interface for managing local LLMs, and `Text Generation WebUI`, which provides an interactive web-based interface for experimenting with different models.
- Additionally, `GPTQ-for-LLaMa` and `AutoGPTQ` support quantized models for memory-efficient execution. For more advanced setups, `vLLM` enables high-throughput inference, while `llama.cpp` provides a highly optimized C++ implementation of LLaMA models for running on CPU-based systems. These frameworks allow researchers and developers to experiment with LLMs without requiring access to large-scale cloud infrastructure.
- One of the most widely used open-source frameworks for installing and running large language models (LLMs) is the `Hugging Face Transformers` library. It provides pre-trained models, easy-to-use APIs, and support for fine-tuning on custom datasets. The library includes models such as GPT, BERT, T5, and LLaMA, among many others, and integrates seamlessly with PyTorch, TensorFlow, and JAX. Hugging Face also offers optimum for hardware optimizations, allowing efficient execution on GPUs and specialized accelerators such as TensorRT and Habana Gaudi. Combined with datasets and accelerate, it enables large-scale training and inference on local or distributed systems. While Hugging Face primarily focuses on cloud and research environments, it can also be used locally with models optimized for consumer hardware, making it a versatile choice for both academic and production applications.

Ollama is a framework that allows users to run local LLMs efficiently. To install Ollama and run a model locally, follow these steps:

Downloading and Installing Ollama To install Ollama, download and execute the official installation script:

Install Ollama

```
1 curl -fsSL https://ollama.com/install.sh | sh
```

Verifying the Installation After installation, check if Ollama is installed correctly by running:

Check Ollama Version

```
1 ollama --version
```

This command should return the installed version of Ollama.

Pulling and Running a Pre-Trained Model To download and execute a pre-trained model, such as Mistral, use:

Download and Run Mistral

```
1 ollama pull mistral
2 ollama run mistral
```

The first command downloads the model, while the second runs it locally.

Starting and Stopping the Ollama Server Ollama can run as a background service to manage models efficiently. To start the Ollama server, use:

Start the Ollama Server

```
1 ollama serve
```

This command launches the Ollama server, making it ready to handle model requests.

To stop the running Ollama server, use:

Stop the Ollama Server

```
1 ollama stop
```

This will gracefully shut down the Ollama service.

Listing Available Models To check which models are installed locally and available for use, run:

List Installed Models

```
1 ollama list
```

This command outputs a list of all locally stored models, along with their sizes and versions.

6.3.1 Interacting with Ollama's Local API

Ollama runs a local REST API on 'http://localhost:11434', allowing interaction with models using HTTP requests. The following examples demonstrate how to generate text using the API with 'curl'

and Python.

Using Curl

Description

The following ‘curl’ command sends a request to the Ollama API, asking it to generate text based on a given prompt.

Using Curl

```
1 curl -X POST http://localhost:11434/api/generate \
2 -H "Content-Type: application/json" \
3 -d '{
4   "model": "mistral",
5   "prompt": "What is the capital of Germany?",
6   "stream": false
7 }'
```

Using Python

Alternatively, you can use Python’s ‘requests’ library to send the same request programmatically.

Using Python

```
1 import requests
2 import json
3
4 url = "http://localhost:11434/api/generate"
5 data = {
6   "model": "mistral",
7   "prompt": "What is the capital of Germany?",
8   "stream": False
9 }
10
11 response = requests.post(url, json=data)
12 print(response.json())
```

Using Ollama’s Python API

Ollama provides a python API to interact with its local server.

Using Ollama’s Python API

```
1 import ollama
2
```

```

3 # Load a local model
4 model = 'mistral'
5
6 # Generate a response
7 response = ollama.chat(model=model, messages=[{"role": "user", "content": "What is
     the capital of France?"}])
8
9 # Print the response
10 print(response['message'][ 'content'])

```

6.3.2 A Local UI with Personal History for Ollama

To create a simple local UI with personal chat history for Ollama, we can use Flask. Below is an example of how to build such a system. You need to use pip to install flask before this can work.

Flask-Based Local Chat UI

```

1 from flask import Flask, request, jsonify, render_template
2 import ollama
3
4 app = Flask(__name__)
5
6 chat_history = [] # Stores full chat history
7
8 @app.route('/')
9 def index():
10     return render_template('index.html') # Serves the HTML UI
11
12 @app.route('/chat', methods=['POST'])
13 def chat():
14     user_input = request.json.get('message')
15
16     if not user_input:
17         return jsonify({'error': 'No message provided'}), 400
18
19     # Append current message to chat history
20     chat_history.append({"role": "user", "content": user_input})
21
22     # Send full conversation history to Ollama
23     response = ollama.chat(model="deepseek-r1:7b", messages=chat_history)
24
25     # Extract Ollama's response
26     bot_reply = response['message'][ 'content']
27
28     # Append bot response to chat history
29     chat_history.append({"role": "assistant", "content": bot_reply})
30
31     return jsonify({'response': bot_reply, 'history': chat_history})

```

```
32
33 if __name__ == '__main__':
34     app.run(debug=True)
```

This simple Flask app allows users to interact with an LLM locally while maintaining chat history. We saved this as `ollama_flask_server.py` in the doce subdirectory `ollama_UI`. Also, we provide the file `index.html` in the subdirectory `templates` to control the UI.

Installing Dependencies

Before running the server, you need to install Flask. You can do this using pip:

Installing Flask

```
1 pip install flask
```

Ensure that you also have Ollama installed and running locally.

Setting Up the UI

The HTML file that provides the user interface should be saved as `index.html` in the `templates` subdirectory inside `code06`. Below is the content of this file:

index.html

```
1 <!DOCTYPE html>
2 <html lang="en">
3 <head>
4     <meta charset="UTF-8">
5     <meta name="viewport" content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1.0">
6     <title>Chatbot</title>
7     <style>
8         body {
9             font-family: Arial, sans-serif;
10            margin: 0;
11            padding: 20px;
12            background-color: #f4f4f4;
13        }
14        #chat-container {
15            width: 50%;
16            max-width: 600px;
17            margin: auto;
18            background: white;
19            padding: 20px;
20            border-radius: 10px;
21            box-shadow: 0px 0px 10px rgba(0, 0, 0, 0.1);
22        }
```

```
23     #chat-box {
24         height: 300px;
25         overflow-y: auto;
26         border: 1px solid #ddd;
27         padding: 10px;
28         margin-bottom: 10px;
29         background: #fff;
30     }
31     .message {
32         padding: 8px;
33         margin: 5px 0;
34         border-radius: 5px;
35     }
36     .user { background: #d1e7fd; text-align: right; }
37     .bot { background: #e6e6e6; text-align: left; }
38     input, button {
39         width: 100%;
40         padding: 10px;
41         margin-top: 10px;
42         border: none;
43         border-radius: 5px;
44     }
45     button {
46         background: #007bff;
47         color: white;
48         cursor: pointer;
49     }
50     button:hover {
51         background: #0056b3;
52     }
53     </style>
54 </head>
55 <body>
56
57     <div id="chat-container">
58         <h2>Chatbot</h2>
59         <div id="chat-box"></div>
60         <input type="text" id="user-input" placeholder="Type a message...">
61         <script>
62             onkeypress="handleKeyPress(event)">
63                 <button onclick="sendMessage()">Send</button>
64             </script>
65             function sendMessage() {
66                 let userInput = document.getElementById("user-input").value;
67                 if (userInput.trim() === "") return;
68
69                 let chatBox = document.getElementById("chat-box");
70             }
71         </div>
72     </div>
73
74     <script>
75         function handleKeyPress(event) {
76             if (event.key === "Enter") {
77                 event.preventDefault();
78                 sendMessage();
79             }
80         }
81         window.addEventListener("load", () => {
82             const userInput = document.getElementById("user-input");
83             const chatBox = document.getElementById("chat-box");
84
85             userInput.addEventListener("input", () => {
86                 const value = userInput.value;
87
88                 if (value.length > 0) {
89                     const messageElement = document.createElement("div");
90                     messageElement.classList.add("message");
91                     messageElement.textContent = value;
92
93                     chatBox.appendChild(messageElement);
94
95                     const scrollHeight = chatBox.scrollHeight;
96                     chatBox.scrollTop = scrollHeight;
97                 }
98             });
99         });
100     </script>
101 
```

```

71          // Append user message
72          let userMessage = document.createElement("div");
73          userMessage.classList.add("message", "user");
74          userMessage.textContent = userInput;
75          chatBox.appendChild(userMessage);
76
77          document.getElementById("user-input").value = ""; // Clear input
78          chatBox.scrollTop = chatBox.scrollHeight; // Auto-scroll
79
80          // Send request to Flask server
81          fetch("/chat", {
82              method: "POST",
83              headers: { "Content-Type": "application/json" },
84              body: JSON.stringify({ message: userInput })
85          })
86          .then(response => response.json())
87          .then(data => {
88              let botMessage = document.createElement("div");
89              botMessage.classList.add("message", "bot");
90              botMessage.textContent = data.response;
91              chatBox.appendChild(botMessage);
92              chatBox.scrollTop = chatBox.scrollHeight;
93          })
94          .catch(error => console.error("Error:", error));
95      }
96
97      function handleKeyPress(event) {
98          if (event.key === "Enter") {
99              sendMessage();
100         }
101     }
102 </script>
103
104 </body>
105 </html>
```

Running the Server

After saving the Python script as `ollama_flask_server.py` and ensuring that `index.html` is in the correct location, navigate to the `code06` directory and run the following command:

Starting the Server

```
1 python 3_ollama_flask_server.py
```

Once the server is running, you should see output like:

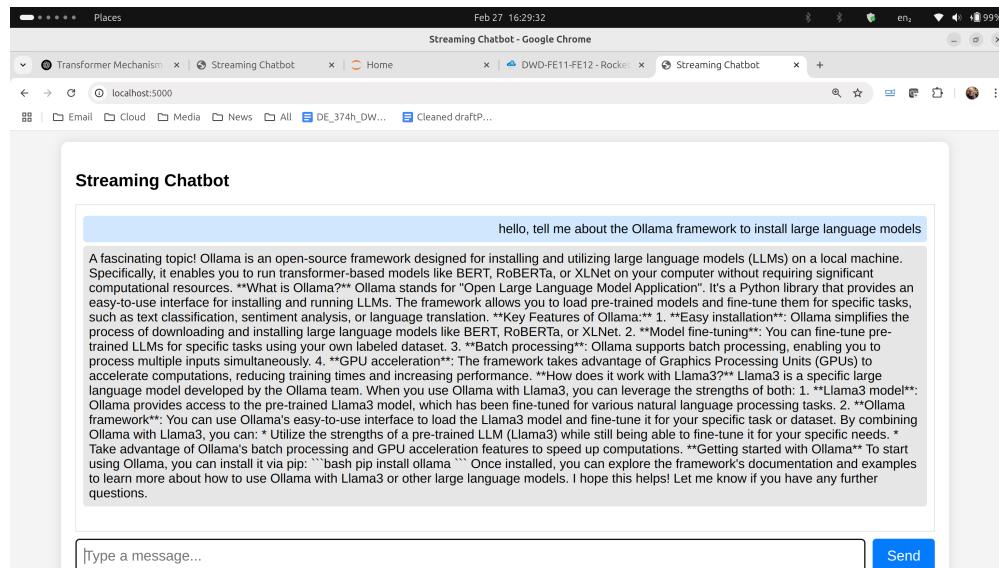


Figure 6.1: Ollama chatbot interface running a local LLM on your laptop, with local UI.

```
Server Output
1 * Running on http://127.0.0.1:5000/ (Press CTRL+C to quit)
```

Accessing the User Interface

To interact with the chatbot, open a web browser and go to:

```
Accessing the UI
1 http://127.0.0.1:5000/
```

From there, you can enter messages in the input field, and the chatbot will respond accordingly. This simple local chat UI provides an easy way to interact with Ollama using a web-based interface while maintaining personal chat history.

6.3.3 Streaming Responses from Ollama with Markdown Formatting

In interactive environments such as Jupyter Notebooks or user interfaces (UI), it can be beneficial to stream responses from Ollama in real time while applying Markdown formatting to be able to display e.g. bold words or headings. The following example demonstrates how to achieve this using Python.

The function `stream_ollama_markdown()`:

- Sends a request to a locally running Ollama server.
- Receives responses in a streaming fashion.

- Formats the output dynamically using Markdown to enhance readability.
- Updates the output in place without reloading the cell.

The function `format_markdown()` ensures that:

- Capitalized words and model names are bolded for emphasis.
- Titles such as "Model Features:" are converted into Markdown headings.
- Lists are properly formatted for readability.

The demo implementation is given below:

```
Streaming Markdown Output from Ollama

1 import requests
2 import json
3 import re
4 from IPython.display import display, Markdown, clear_output
5
6 def format_markdown(text):
7     text = text.replace("\n", "\n\n")
8     text = re.sub(r'\b([A-Z][a-z]+(?:\s+[A-Z][a-z]+)*)\b', r'**\1**', text)
9     text = re.sub(r'\b([A-Z]{3,})\b', r'**\1**', text)
10    return text
11
12 def stream_ollama_markdown(prompt, model="llama3"):
13     url = "http://localhost:11434/api/generate"
14     data = {"model": model, "prompt": prompt, "stream": True}
15
16     response = requests.post(url, json=data, stream=True)
17     buffer = ""
18     output_display = display(Markdown(""), display_id=True)
19
20     for chunk in response.iter_lines():
21         if chunk:
22             try:
23                 data = json.loads(chunk.decode("utf-8"))
24                 text = data.get("response", "")
25                 if text:
26                     buffer += text
27                     clear_output(wait=True)
28                     output_display.update(Markdown(format_markdown(buffer)))
29             except json.JSONDecodeError:
30                 pass
31
32     # Final display (in case last chunk isn't shown)
33     clear_output(wait=True)
34     output_display.update(Markdown(format_markdown(buffer)))
35     # No return
```

```
36
37
38 # Try it
39 stream_ollama_markdown("Explain the concept of self-attention in Transformers.")
```

This method enables seamless streaming of responses from Ollama, allowing for an interactive and visually structured output in Jupyter environments. We also provide a demo implementation of a streaming interface for your flask based user interface (UI) to Ollama, see `ollama_flask_server_streaming.py` with the `index_stream.html` in the `templates/` directory.

6.3.4 Available Models for Download and Response Speed

There are more than 150 different LLMs for download and use on Ollama. Here is a selection with some highlighted features.

1. **DeepSeek-R1 (1.5B – 671B)** A powerful model family covering a wide range of sizes, from small-scale 1.5B to massive 671B parameters, making it flexible for different applications.
2. **Llama3 (8B, 70B)** One of the most anticipated next-generation models from Meta, optimized for efficiency and capable of handling diverse NLP tasks with strong performance.
3. **Mistral (7B)** A lightweight model with excellent reasoning capabilities, outperforming many larger models in specific tasks while remaining efficient.
4. **Qwen2.5 (0.5B – 72B)** Alibaba's Qwen models are designed for multilingual tasks and reasoning, with a focus on applications requiring high levels of comprehension.
5. **CodeLlama (7B – 70B)** An LLM specifically optimized for code generation and software development, making it useful for programmers and AI-assisted coding.
6. **Gemma (2B, 7B)** Google's Gemma models are efficient and optimized for deployment, designed for responsible AI usage and fine-tuned performance.
7. **Mixtral (7B, 22B)** A mixture-of-experts (MoE) model that enables highly efficient inference while maintaining competitive accuracy in language tasks.
8. **Starcoder2 (3B – 15B)** A coding model built for AI-assisted development, capable of understanding and generating code efficiently across multiple programming languages.
9. **Orca Mini (3B – 70B)** A distilled model trained with advanced reasoning capabilities, making it an excellent option for lightweight yet powerful AI assistants.
10. **Llava (7B – 34B)** A vision-language model capable of understanding images along with text, useful for applications in multimodal AI tasks like captioning and visual question answering.

Large Language Models (LLMs) have become increasingly accessible for local installations, enabling users to process text without relying on cloud services. One crucial performance metric for such models is their response time, typically measured in milliseconds per token.

	model	tokens	duration_sec	tokens/sec	sec/page
0	mistral	220	52.64	4.18	79.68
1	llama3	270	49.18	5.49	60.66
2	deepseek-r1:7b	613	121.55	5.04	66.03
3	deepseek-r1:1.5b	561	28.68	19.56	17.02

Figure 6.2: Ollama on windows wsl on a regular workstation or laptop. With a light NVIDIA GPU (4GB) speed is about 2.5 times faster. On a linux laptop I got 33 token per second for deepseek-r1:1.5b.

The speed at which an LLM generates tokens depends on hardware capabilities, model size, and optimization techniques. The DeepSeek-R1:1.5B model on a typical Linux laptop generates one token every 30 milliseconds (ms). The number of tokens generated in a given time frame is given by:

$$N = \frac{T}{t}, \quad (6.6)$$

where:

- N is the number of tokens,
- T is the total time available (in ms),
- t is the time per token (30 ms in this case).

For practical scenarios:

- In one second ($T = 1000$ ms):

$$N = \frac{1000}{30} \approx 33.33 \text{ tokens per second.} \quad (6.7)$$

- In ten seconds ($T = 10000$ ms):

$$N = \frac{10000}{30} \approx 333.33 \text{ tokens in ten seconds.} \quad (6.8)$$

To estimate the text length corresponding to these tokens, we assume:

- One token typically consists of about 4 characters (including spaces and punctuation).
- One token represents approximately 0.75 words in standard English text.

Thus, for 333 tokens:

- Character count: $333 \times 4 = 1332$ characters.
- Word count: $333 \times 0.75 \approx 250$ words.

This corresponds to roughly one page of text in a typical document.

The response time of an LLM either online as a service or installed on a local computer significantly influences usability. At 30 ms per token, the DeepSeek-R1:1.5B model can generate around 33 tokens per second or 250 words in ten seconds. Optimizing performance with hardware acceleration (e.g., GPUs, tensor cores) can further improve these figures, making local AI processing a viable alternative to cloud-based models.

Recommendation

Today, medium size LLMs can be run for individual users on a laptop, with acceptable response times for interactive applications. Alternatively and depending on privacy needs the use of platform accounts by AI companies provides faster access to the basic LLM functionality. User services based on either locally or remotely hosted LLM functionality is at hand and can be combined with specific local services and data.

Chapter 7

LLM with Retrieval-Augmented Generation (RAG)

Retrieval-Augmented Generation (RAG) is a powerful approach that enhances language models by incorporating external knowledge retrieval. This chapter guides the user through setting up and using RAG, with practical examples.

Introduction to RAG Traditional LLMs rely solely on their pre-trained knowledge. RAG extends this by searching a document database for relevant context before generating a response. This improves accuracy, factuality, and adaptability to domain-specific knowledge.

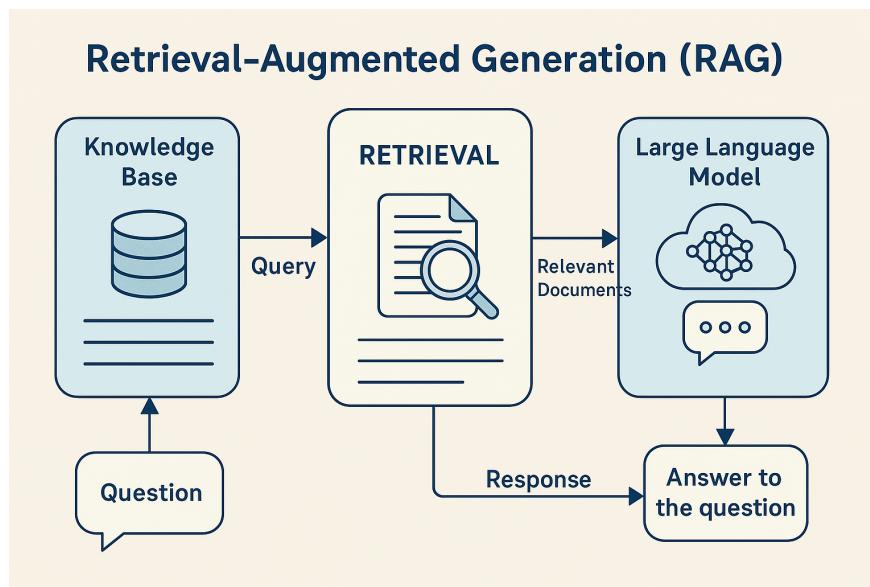


Figure 7.1: Retrieval-Augmented Generation (RAG) employs the intelligence of Large Language Models (LLM) in combination with local knowledge and databases.

7.1 Preparing Documents

Installing Required Dependencies To set up RAG, install the necessary libraries:

Install Dependencies

```
1 !pip install sentence-transformers==2.2.2 transformers==4.31.0
2 !pip install faiss-cpu openai numpy pymupdf
```

To get compatible versions of transformers and sentence-transformers might be a little tricky. I had to go back to python3.11 to get this running in a special virtual environment.

First, let us work with documents which are in a folder tree starting with its root node documents/. We start by recursively loading text and PDF documents from this folder, marching through the tree. For pdf documents, we will use some standard tools to extract the text from the documents - there are more sophisticated packages, but we put simplicity first for the moment.

Loading Documents

```
1 import numpy as np
2 import os
3 import fitz # PyMuPDF for PDF text extraction
4
5 # Function to extract text from PDF
6 def extract_text_from_pdf(pdf_path):
7     doc = fitz.open(pdf_path)
8     text = ""
9     for page in doc:
10         text += page.get_text()
11     return text
12
13 # Load documents from a folder recursively
14 def load_documents_from_folder(folder_path):
15     documents = []
16     file_info = []
17
18     for dirpath, dirnames, filenames in os.walk(folder_path):
19         # Exclude .git directories
20         dirnames[:] = [d for d in dirnames if not d.startswith('.git')]
21
22         for filename in filenames:
23             if filename.startswith('.git'):
24                 continue # Skip any .git files
25
26             file_path = os.path.join(dirpath, filename)
27             if filename.endswith(('.f90','.txt', '.org', '.sh', '.toml','.pdf')) \
28                 or '.' not in filename: # Load .txt, .sh, .pdf, and files without
29                 extensions
30                 try:
```

```

30         if filename.endswith('.pdf'):
31             content = extract_text_from_pdf(file_path)
32         else:
33             with open(file_path, 'r', encoding='utf-8') as file:
34                 content = file.read()
35             documents.append(content)
36             file_info.append((filename, file_path))
37             print(f"Added to DB: {file_path}")
38     except Exception as e:
39         print(f"Failed to process {file_path}: {e}")
40
41     return documents, file_info

```

We call the function to load all available documents by

Loading Documents

```

1 folder_path = './documents' # Replace with your folder path
2 documents, file_info = load_documents_from_folder(folder_path)

```

As an example we checkout the publically available ICON model by

Checkout ICON model

```

1 git clone git@gitlab.dkrz.de:icon/icon-model.git

```

In this case, the output is

ICON model from icon-model.org loaded

```

1 Added to DB: ./documents/configure
2 Added to DB: ./documents/make_rundscripts
3 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/install-sh
4 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/move_to_prefix.sh
5 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/patch_namelist
6 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/timewarp
7 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/icon_sorted_deps.sh
8 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/id++
9 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/filelock
10 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/mkexp/namelist2config
11 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/mkexp/mkexp
12 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/mkexp/upexp
13 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/mkexp/unmergeconfig
14 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/mkexp/selconfig
15 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/mkexp/importexp
16 Added to DB: ./documents/utils/mkexp/editexp
17 ...

```

7.2 Generating Embeddings for Documents

To retrieve relevant information, we transform text into **numerical embeddings** using a **transformer model**. These embeddings capture the *semantic meaning* of text, allowing for similarity-based retrieval and efficient search operations. A widely used approach for generating such embeddings is **sentence transformers**, which map textual data into a high-dimensional vector space.

In the following implementation, we utilize the all-MiniLM-L6-v2 model from the sentence-transformers library. This model provides a compact yet efficient method for encoding textual information. The embeddings are computed using **mean pooling** over the token representations, ensuring that the vector captures the full meaning of the sentence. Additionally, we apply **L2 normalization** to facilitate cosine similarity comparisons.

Generating Embeddings

```

1 from sentence_transformers import SentenceTransformer
2
3 embedder = SentenceTransformer('all-MiniLM-L6-v2')
4
5 # Load documents and create embeddings
6 documents, file_info = load_documents_from_folder("documents/")
7 embeddings = embedder.encode(documents, convert_to_numpy=True)
8
9 # Sanity check
10 print("Loaded documents:", len(documents))
11 print("Embedding shape:", embeddings.shape)
12 print("Example file:", file_info[0])
13 print("Example snippet:\n", documents[0][:200])

```

The function `embedder.encode` tokenizes the input text, processes it through the transformer model, and computes a **mean-pooled representation** over the token dimension. The final embeddings are **normalized**, ensuring that similarity computations (e.g., cosine similarity) remain well-scaled.

Such embeddings enable applications in **semantic search, clustering**, and **document classification** by mapping textual data into a structured numerical space that can be efficiently queried.

In our case we obtain

Check embeddings

```

1 Loaded documents: 2391
2 Embedding shape: (2391, 384)
3 Example file: ('make_rungs', 'documents/make_rungs')
4 Example snippet:
5  #!/bin/bash
6
7 # ICON
8 #
9 # -----
10 # Copyright (C) 2004-2024, DWD, MPI-M, DKRZ, KIT, ETH, MeteoSwiss

```

```
11 # Contact information: icon-model.org
12 # See AUTHORS.TXT for a list
```

Our embeddings variable has a shape of (2391, 384), which means there are 2391 rows, i.e. 2391 text inputs (documents, sentences, or paragraphs). We have 384 columns, i.e. each text input is represented as a 384-dimensional vector.

How the Embeddings Work. The closer two embeddings are (e.g., using cosine similarity), the more semantically similar their corresponding texts are. The high-dimensional space (384D) allows the model to capture complex semantic relationships between texts.

Retrieving Relevant Documents When a user asks a question, we find the most relevant documents by searching the FAISS index.

Querying the Vector Database

```
1 def query_vector_db(query, k=2):
2     query_embedding = get_embedding(query)
3     distances, indices = index.search(query_embedding, k)
4     return [documents[idx] for idx in indices[0]]
5
6 query = "What is the main functionality of BACY?"
7 retrieved_docs = query_vector_db(query)
8 print(retrieved_docs)
```

Setting Up a Vector Database with FAISS To efficiently search for similar text embeddings, we store them in a **FAISS index**. FAISS (Facebook AI Similarity Search) is an optimized library for fast **nearest neighbor search** in high-dimensional spaces. Instead of performing a brute-force comparison of all pairs of embeddings, FAISS allows us to *index and retrieve* the most relevant embeddings efficiently.

FAISS supports different types of indexes, but the most basic and commonly used one is **IndexFlatL2**, which stores vectors and enables fast k -nearest neighbor (KNN) search using the L_2 (Euclidean) distance.

Setting Up FAISS Index

```
1 import faiss
2
3 # Create FAISS index
4 dimension = embeddings.shape[1]
5 index = faiss.IndexFlatL2(dimension)
6 index.add(embeddings)
```

The IndexFlatL2 structure is an exact nearest-neighbor search index that:

- Stores all embeddings in memory.
- Computes pairwise distances using **L2 norm (Euclidean distance)**.
- Allows fast similarity search without additional quantization.

Querying the FAISS Index. Once the FAISS index is built, we can *perform similarity searches* by converting a text query into an embedding and retrieving the k -nearest neighbors from the indexed documents. The following function allows querying the vector database and retrieving the most relevant documents.

Querying the FAISS Index

```

1 # Query function
2 def query_vector_db(query, k=2):
3     """
4         Searches the FAISS index for the k most similar embeddings to the query.
5
6     Parameters:
7         query (str): Input text to search for similar documents.
8         k (int): Number of nearest neighbors to retrieve.
9
10    Returns:
11        list of tuples: Each tuple contains (retrieved_document, file_info).
12    """
13    query_embedding = get_embedding(query).astype(np.float32) # Convert to FAISS
14    format
15    distances, indices = index.search(query_embedding, k) # Perform similarity
16    search
17    return [(documents[idx], file_info[idx]) for idx in indices[0]]

```

To demonstrate how the FAISS search works, we run an example query:

Example Query to FAISS

```

1 import re
2 import unicodedata
3
4 def clean_text(text, max_chars=500):
5     text = unicodedata.normalize("NFC", text) # Normalize Unicode
6     text = ''.join(c if c.isprintable() else ' ' for c in text) # Keep printable
6     chars
7     return re.sub(r'\s+', ' ', text).strip()[:max_chars].encode("utf-8", "ignore")
7     .decode("utf-8")
8
9 # Example usage
10 query_text = "Cloud cover intro"
11 results = query_vector_db(query_text, k=6)
12
13 for doc, info in results:
14     print("File Info:", clean_text(str(info)))
15     print("\nDocument:", clean_text(doc))
16     print("-" * 50)

```

This example queries the FAISS index for the $top k$ *most relevant documents* related to the weather forecast. The function:

- Converts the input query into an *embedding*.
- Searches the FAISS index for the k most similar embeddings.
- Returns the corresponding **documents and metadata**.

By retrieving the closest matches, we enable *semantic search*, allowing users to find *contextually similar documents* rather than relying on simple keyword matching. For our ICON example where we ask for *Cloud cover intro* we get the results indicated in Figure 7.2.

Figure 7.2: Vector Database Output

7.3 Using an LLM Locally or with OpenAI for Response Generation

Once we retrieve relevant documents, we provide them as context to OpenAI's LLM or any other large language model. This allows us to enhance responses with domain-specific information and improve accuracy.

Setting up OpenAI API. To use OpenAI, we need an *OpenAI platform account* and an API key (OPENAI_API_KEY). If you have stored this key as an environment variable, you can initialize the API client as follows:

Connection to OpenAI

```

1 import openai
2 import os
3
4 # Initialize OpenAI API
5 client = openai.Client(api_key=os.getenv('OPENAI_API_KEY')) # Updated API
    initialization

```

If no error occurs, the API connection is successfully established.

Querying OpenAI with Retrieved Context. Once we have access to OpenAI's API, we can define a function to query the model. The function *retrieves relevant documents* from our vector database

and passes them as context to the model. This enables OpenAI to provide responses based on our own data rather than generic knowledge. Here, we will employ the model *gpt-4o-mini* which is known for its speed and which is much cheaper than the flagship models.

Generating Responses with OpenAI

```

1 # Step 6: Use OpenAI to discuss results
2 def chat_with_openai(query):
3     retrieved_docs = query_vector_db(query, k=20)
4     context = "\n\n".join([f"File: {file[0]}\nContent: {doc}" for doc, file in
5     retrieved_docs])
6
7     response = client.chat.completions.create(
8         model="gpt-4o-mini", # using the gpt-4o-mini model
9         messages=[
10             {"role": "system", "content": "You are a helpful assistant."},
11             {"role": "user", "content": f"Based on the following documents, answer
12             the question:\n{context}\n\nQuestion: {query}"}
13         ]
14     )
15
16     answer = response.choices[0].message.content
17
18     # Append file references to the answer
19     file_references = "\n\nReferenced Files:\n" + "\n".join([f"{file[0]}: {file
20     [1]}" for _, file in retrieved_docs])
21
22     return answer + file_references

```

How it works. The function `chat_with_openai(query)` operates as follows:

- *Retrieves relevant documents* using the `query_vector_db(query, k=20)` function.
- *Formats* the retrieved text into a structured context.
- *Sends the context* to OpenAI's model, prompting it to answer the query based on the retrieved content.
- *Returns the generated response*, along with file references for transparency.

Example query. If a user searches for a specific topic, such as:

Example Query Execution

```

1 # OpenAI Answers
2 query = "How is cloud cover treated in ICON?"
3 answer = chat_with_openai(query)
4
5 from IPython.display import display, Markdown
6 display(Markdown(answer))

```

This ensures that OpenAI generates responses grounded in *our own database*, reducing hallucination and improving relevance.

Here, the result for our example is as follows.

The ICON (ICOsaHedral Nonhydrostatic) model is a state-of-the-art atmospheric model developed for weather and climate simulations. Its structure is designed to efficiently handle both global and regional simulations, including various atmospheric and surface physics processes. Below is an overview of its key components and architecture:

1. Grid Structure

Horizontal Grid: ICON uses a spherical grid based on the projection of an icosahedron. This grid can be refined through edge bisection, leading to triangular or hexagonal elements. The horizontal representation allows high resolution and flexibility in grid configuration.

Vertical Grid: The vertical structure uses hybrid coordinates, where the atmosphere is discretized into horizontal layers. These vertical layers can be based on pressure or height coordinates, accommodating both hydrostatic and non-hydrostatic dynamics.

2. Core Components

Dynamics: ICON features a non-hydrostatic dynamical core that enables accurate simulations of complex atmospheric phenomena, such as storms and convective processes. It employs a C-staggering scheme for state variables to improve computational efficiency, especially for advection and momentum transport.

Physics: The model integrates various physics packages for parameterizing physical processes. This includes:

Cloud microphysics to simulate cloud formation and precipitation.

Radiation schemes (like RRTMG) to calculate the transfer of solar and terrestrial radiation.

Convection schemes to model the vertical transport of heat and moisture in the atmosphere.

Surface processes involving land-atmosphere interactions, including soil moisture and vegetation effects.

3. Parallelization

ICON is designed for high-performance computing environments, utilizing both MPI (Message Passing Interface) and OpenMP for parallelization. This allows it to run efficiently on modern supercomputers, accommodating large-scale simulations with many processors.

4. Namelists

The configuration of the ICON model is managed through namelists, which are structured text files containing parameters for different aspects of the model. This includes settings for grid configurations, physics schemes, and output specifications.

5. Modules and Naming Conventions

The code is organized into modules for different functionalities (such as dynamics, radiation, and microphysics). Each module contains subroutines and functions that handle specific tasks. A clear naming convention is followed for ease of understanding, with prefixes used to indicate the nature and scope of variables.

6. Output and Diagnostics

ICON is equipped with flexible output capabilities that can generate various diagnostic fields related to atmospheric states and physical processes, including radar reflectivity and cloud cover. Output can be tailored to specific requirements utilizing naming conventions for files and variable names.

7. Community and Documentation

The development of ICON follows best coding practices as outlined in guidelines for readability and maintainability. The model is supported by detailed documentation, ensuring users can effectively configure and use the model for their research needs.

8. External Packages

ICON can integrate with external libraries and frameworks for additional functionalities, allowing for advanced features like data assimilation and coupling with ocean models.

In summary, the ICON model embodies a sophisticated structure that combines modern computational techniques with detailed atmospheric science, enabling high-resolution weather and climate simulations across a range of applications. Its modular architecture and parallel processing capabilities make it suitable for use in both research and operational forecasting environments.

Referenced Files: [...]

An alternative to OpenAI's API is to use *Ollama*, which allows running large language models locally. This provides greater control over data privacy and removes dependency on external services. The following function queries a locally hosted model, such as Mistral or DeepSeek-R1:1.5b, using retrieved documents from the vector database.

Querying Ollama Locally

```

1 import ollama
2
3 def chat_with_ollama(query, model="mistral"):
4     """Queries Ollama's local LLM (Mistral or DeepSeek) with retrieved VectorDB
5     documents."""
6     retrieved_docs = query_vector_db(query, k=20)
7     context = "\n\n".join([f"File: {file[0]}\nContent: {doc}" for doc, file in
8     retrieved_docs])
9
10    full_prompt = f"Based on the following documents, answer the question:\n{
11        context}\n\nQuestion: {query}"
12
13    response = ollama.chat(model=model, messages=[{"role": "user", "content": full_prompt}])
14
15    answer = response['message']['content']
16
17    # Append file references
18    file_references = "\n\nReferenced Files:\n" + "\n".join([f"{file[0]}: {file[1]}" for _, file in retrieved_docs])
19
20    return answer + file_references

```

The function first retrieves relevant documents from the vector database and formats them into a structured prompt. It then queries a local Ollama instance running the selected model and appends file references to ensure traceability.

The following examples demonstrate how to use DeepSeek-R1:1.5b and Mistral to answer a query regarding the structure of the ICON model.

Example Query with DeepSeek-R1:1.5b

```

1 query_text = "Tell me about the structure of the ICON model"
2 answer = chat_with_ollama(query_text, model="deepseek-r1:1.5b")
3
4 # Display response as formatted Markdown

```

```
5 display(Markdown(answer))
```

Example Query with Mistral

```
1 answer = chat_with_ollama(query_text, model="mistral")
2
3 # Display response as formatted Markdown
4 display(Markdown(answer))
```

This approach allows flexible switching between different local models, depending on the required accuracy, speed, or computational efficiency. It works locally on your laptop, but might take slightly longer for answers.

Here is the deepseek answer:

Alright, I need to tell someone about the structure of the ICON model. Let's break this down step by step.
First, I should recall what the ICON model is. From my limited knowledge, it's a global numerical weather prediction model used for atmospheric simulations. The user mentioned various files like balfringpu_nvidia and others related to it. These probably contain the source code and documentation.

Looking at the files provided:

[...]

In summary, understanding the ICON model involves knowing its architecture, how it processes data through various components, and the parameters that control this processing. The structure is complex yet modular, allowing for detailed physical modeling on a global scale.

The ICON (Icosahedral Non-Oceanic Model) model is a global numerical weather prediction system designed to simulate atmospheric circulation. Here's its structured overview:

Structure of the ICON Model

Configuration Management:

[...]

Computes forward in time using processes like hydrostatic pressure, moist static stability, gravity wave propagation, advection, radiation, etc.

Utilizes parallelization on high-performance computing clusters for efficiency.

Key Features

High Scalability: Designed for efficient computation on clusters of CPUs.

Global Coverage: Serves as a foundational component for weather models.

Flexibility: Adjustable parameters allow customization for specific applications.

The ICON model's structure is modular, managing data through components that ensure accurate and scalable global atmospheric modeling.

Referenced Files: [...] Namelist_overview.pdf: ./documents/doc/Namelist_overview.pdf icon_grid.pdf: ./documents/doc/technical/icon_grid.pdf dot_cdprc: ./documents/schedulers/ecmwf/gen/dot_cdprc icon_standard.pdf: ./documents/doc/style/icon_standard.pdf [...]

7.4 Saving and Reloading the Vector Database, Collecting Search Originals, Chunking long Documents

To avoid recomputing embeddings every time, we save the FAISS index to disk. This allows us to reload it efficiently for future searches.

Saving and Loading FAISS Index

```

1 import faiss
2 import os
3
4 # Save FAISS index
5 faiss.write_index(index, "vector_db.index")
6 print("Vector database saved.")
7
8 # Ensure file exists before loading
9 if os.path.exists("vector_db.index"):
10     index = faiss.read_index("vector_db.index")
11     print("Vector database loaded.")
12 else:
13     print("Error: FAISS index file not found.")

```

This method ensures that the FAISS index persists across sessions, eliminating the need for recomputing embeddings. If additional metadata, such as document mappings, is needed, they must be stored separately in a structured format (e.g., JSON or a database).

Search Results: Documents. Often it can be helpful to look into the results of a search directly. The following code saves all retrieved documents into a designated results folder, while ensuring previous results are backed up by renaming the existing folder.

Save Search Documents

```

1 import os
2 import shutil
3
4 def backup_and_create_results_folder(base_folder="results"):
5     """Backs up existing results folder by renaming it to results_nnn and creates
       a new empty folder."""
6
7     if os.path.exists(base_folder):
8         counter = 1
9         while os.path.exists(f"{base_folder}_{counter:03d}"):
10             counter += 1
11         backup_folder = f"{base_folder}_{counter:03d}"
12         shutil.move(base_folder, backup_folder)
13         print(f"Existing results folder backed up as: {backup_folder}")
14
15     os.makedirs(base_folder, exist_ok=True)
16     return base_folder

```

```

17
18 def copy_retrieved_documents(query, k=10, results_folder="results"):
19     """Finds relevant documents using FAISS and copies them to the results folder,
20     saving the query."""
21
22     # Backup old results and create new folder
23     results_folder = backup_and_create_results_folder(results_folder)
24
25     # Retrieve relevant documents
26     retrieved_docs = query_vector_db(query, k)
27
28     copied_files = []
29
30     for _, file_info in retrieved_docs:
31         file_path = file_info[1] # Assuming file_info[1] contains the file path
32
33         if os.path.exists(file_path):
34             dest_path = os.path.join(results_folder, os.path.basename(file_path))
35             shutil.copy(file_path, dest_path)
36             copied_files.append(dest_path)
37         else:
38             print(f"Warning: File not found - {file_path}")
39
40     # Save query text
41     query_path = os.path.join(results_folder, "query.txt")
42     with open(query_path, "w", encoding="utf-8") as f:
43         f.write(query)
44
45     print(f"Copied {len(copied_files)} files to {results_folder}")
46     print(f"Query saved in {query_path}")

```

Example Usage. The following example retrieves documents related to turbulence schemes in ICON and saves them in the results folder.

Example Query and Document Copy

```

1 query_text = "What turbulence scheme in ICON?"
2 copy_retrieved_documents(query_text, k=20)

```

Displaying the Retrieved Files. Once the search is complete, the saved documents can be listed to verify their contents. The following example shows the typical contents of the results folder after a search.

alps_mch_test_gpu	daint_cpu_cce	flux_diagram-crop.pdf
icon_atm_echam_phy_scidoc.pdf	icon_technical.pdf	NOTICE
AUTHORS.txt	daint_cpu_nvidia_mixed	flux_diagram.pdf
icon_tuning_vars.pdf	query.txt	icon_grid.pdf
balfrin_gpu_nvidia_mixed	dep5	horeka_cpu_nvhpcl
lmclouds2010.pdf	README	icon_standard.pdf

This setup ensures that all relevant documents are efficiently stored, organized, and available for analysis.

Adding some Tutorial to the Search Database. Providing only some code base is often not sufficient to understand it. One important step is to add more targeted material to the search.

Often some tutorial is available online but is not part of the source code repository. To ensure efficient retrieval, we split the tutorial into small chunks, embed each chunk, and add them to the FAISS vector database.

Processing ICON Tutorial to get pages

```

1 from PyPDF2 import PdfReader
2
3 def extract_pages_from_pdf(pdf_path):
4     """Reads a PDF and returns a list of page texts."""
5     reader = PdfReader(pdf_path)
6     return [page.extract_text() for page in reader.pages]
7
8 # Load the tutorial as separate pages
9 tutorial_pdf = "ai_tutorial.pdf"
10 tutorial_pages = extract_pages_from_pdf(tutorial_pdf)
11
12 # Check output
13 print(f"Extracted {len(tutorial_pages)} pages.")

```

Chunking and Embedding

```

1 tutorial_embeddings = np.vstack([get_embedding(page) for page in tutorial_pages])
2
3 tutorial_file_name = "ai_tutorial.pdf"
4 tutorial_page_refs = [f"{tutorial_file_name} - Page {i+1}" for i in range(len(
    tutorial_pages))]
5
6 # Add to main lists
7 documents.extend(tutorial_pages)
8 file_info.extend([(ref, tutorial_file_name) for ref in tutorial_page_refs])
9
10 index.add(tutorial_embeddings)

```

This ensures that the tutorial is available for search queries, returning relevant sections instead of requiring manual document lookup. Here, I added a draft of the AI tutorial you are reading.

Query with Code and Tutorial included

```

1 # OpenAI Answers
2 query = "What NN architectures did we talk about? CNN? GNN? Transformers?"
3 answer = chat_with_openai(query)
4

```

```
5 from IPython.display import display, Markdown
6 display(Markdown(answer))
```

OpenAI with gpt-4o-mini comes with the following answer:

Based on the documents provided, the discussed neural network (NN) architectures include:

Feedforward Neural Networks (FFNN) - The simplest form of artificial neural networks where information moves in one direction from the input layer through hidden layers to the output layer.

Convolutional Neural Networks (CNN) - Powerful architectures typically used for image processing and can be applied to one-dimensional data, such as time series and function classification.

Recurrent Neural Networks (RNN) - Particularly highlighted for sequence learning, with types like Long Short-Term Memory (LSTM) networks, which improved the processing of language sequences.

Transformers - Introduced groundbreaking innovations with self-attention mechanisms and parallel processing, becoming the standard for modern language models.

The documents specifically mention CNNs and Transformers, while RNNs (including LSTMs) are noted for their advancements in sequence processing. There was no mention of Graph Neural Networks (GNN) in the provided materials.

Referenced Files: ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 5: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 188: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 111: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 182: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 101: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 90: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 124: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 130: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 113: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 192: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 190: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 102: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 191: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 87: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 120: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 131: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 114: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 193: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 126: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 167: ai_tutorial.pdf

Mistral is getting this as well in a very concise way.

Mistral Query

```
1 answer = chat_with_ollama(query, model="mistral")
2
3 # Display response as formatted Markdown
4 display(Markdown(answer))
```

In this text, we talked about three types of neural network architectures: Convolutional Neural Networks (CNN), Graph Neural Networks (GNN), and Transformers. The CNN architecture was discussed in the context of image processing tasks, whereas Transformers were mentioned in relation to large language models and the self-attention mechanism. It appears that GNN wasn't directly addressed in this particular part of the text, but it could be inferred from other sections discussing graph-based problems like

social network analysis or molecular simulations.

Referenced Files: ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 5: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 188:
 ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 111: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 182:
 ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 101: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 90:
 ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 124: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 130:
 ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 113: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 192:
 ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 190: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 102:
 ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 191: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 87:
 ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 120: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 131:
 ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 114: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 193:
 ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 126: ai_tutorial.pdf ai_tutorial.pdf - Page 167:
 ai_tutorial.pdf

In general, chunking and decomposition of the material into good and adequate parts is a very important part of the whole process. The LLM has limited context size and using the right information is a crucial part of answering a query or taking part in a discussion.

7.5 End-to-End AI-Powered Answer Pipeline

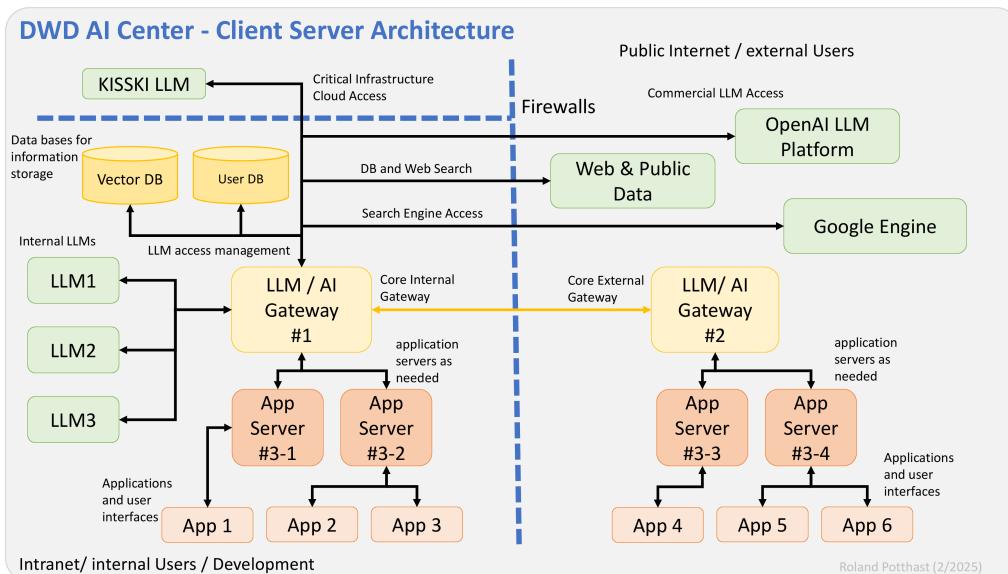


Figure 7.3: Client-server architecture for AI-powered search and answer generation.

This section explains the primary components of a pipeline that combines Google search, web scraping, and a Large Language Model (LLM) to generate context-aware answers from real-time web data.

Overview:

- `google_search`: queries Google Custom Search to retrieve relevant URLs.
- `scrape_website`: fetches content from the found websites.

- `generate_answer`: sends a prompt to OpenAI's GPT model for generating answers.
- `answer_from_google`: coordinates the complete process end-to-end.

This section provides a structured explanation of each core function used in the pipeline that combines Google search, web scraping, and language model-based answering.

search_google This function uses the Google Custom Search API to perform a web search for a given query. It takes as input the query string, a valid API key, a Custom Search Engine ID, and the desired number of results. If the request is successful, it parses the JSON response and extracts the top result URLs along with their titles. It also prints a nicely formatted list of these results for reference. If the request fails, an error message is printed and an empty list is returned.

scrape_website This function fetches the content of a given URL using a standard HTTP GET request with a browser-like user agent. It parses the response HTML using BeautifulSoup and extracts up to 15 paragraph elements (`<p>`) to form a readable body of text. If no paragraph content is found or an error occurs during the request, a fallback message is returned.

generate_answer This function sends a prompt to the OpenAI GPT API (using model `gpt-4o-mini`) to generate a natural language answer. It initializes the OpenAI client using the provided API key, structures the input as a chat-like conversation with a system and a user message, and returns the generated content from the assistant. This encapsulates the language generation capabilities of the model.

answer_from_google This is the main orchestration function that integrates the other components. It performs the full pipeline: searching Google, scraping the top URLs, formatting the content, and sending it to the LLM for summarization and answering. The function constructs a prompt that includes the original query and the concatenated extracted text from multiple sources, and then calls `generate_answer` to retrieve the final result.

Code Implementation:

```
ai search pipeline

1 import requests
2 from bs4 import BeautifulSoup
3 import openai
4
5 # Function to perform a Google Search and return top result URLs
6 def search_google(query, api_key, search_engine_id, num_results=5):
7     url = f"https://www.googleapis.com/customsearch/v1?key={api_key}&cx={search_engine_id}&q={query}&num={num_results}"
8     response = requests.get(url)
9
10    if response.status_code != 200:
11        print(f"Error: {response.status_code} - {response.text}")
12        return []
13
14    # Parse the JSON response and extract the top results
15    results = response.json().get("items", [])
16    urls = [result.get("link") for result in results]
17    titles = [result.get("title") for result in results]
18
19    # Scrape the content of the top URLs
20    bodies = []
21    for url in urls:
22        page = requests.get(url)
23        soup = BeautifulSoup(page.content, "html.parser")
24        paragraphs = soup.find_all("p")
25        bodies.append(" ".join([p.get_text() for p in paragraphs[:15]]))
26
27    # Construct the prompt for the LLM
28    prompt = f"Answer the following question based on the information provided in the URLs above.\n\n{query}\n\n"
29    for i, url in enumerate(urls):
30        prompt += f"\nURL {i+1}: {url}\nContent:\n{bodies[i]}\n"
31
32    # Call the LLM to generate the answer
33    response = openai.Completion.create(
34        engine="gpt-4o-mini",
35        prompt=prompt,
36        max_tokens=150,
37        temperature=0.5
38    )
39
40    return response.choices[0].text
```

```
13
14     data = response.json()
15     results = []
16
17     if "items" in data:
18         print(f"\nSearch Results for: '{query}' (Top {num_results})")
19         print("=" * 60)
20
21     for i, item in enumerate(data["items"], start=1):
22         title = item.get("title", "No Title")
23         link = item.get("link", "No Link")
24
25         results.append(link) # Only store the links for scraping
26
27         # Display retrieved links
28         print(f"**Result {i}:** {title}")
29         print(f"{link}")
30         print("-" * 60)
31
32     return results
33
34 # Function to scrape full text from a webpage
35 def scrape_website(url):
36     try:
37         response = requests.get(url, headers={"User-Agent": "Mozilla/5.0"}, timeout=10)
38         soup = BeautifulSoup(response.text, "html.parser")
39
40         # Extract paragraphs
41         paragraphs = soup.find_all("p")
42         content = "\n".join([p.get_text() for p in paragraphs[:15]]) # Extract first 15 paragraphs
43
44         return content if content else "No content extracted."
45     except Exception as e:
46         return f"Failed to scrape {url}: {e}"
47
48 # Function to generate an answer using OpenAI API
49 def generate_answer(prompt, llm_api_key):
50     client = openai.OpenAI(api_key=llm_api_key)
51     response = client.chat.completions.create(
52         model="gpt-4o-mini",
53         messages=[{"role": "system", "content": "You are a helpful AI assistant."},
54                  {"role": "user", "content": prompt}]
55    )
56    return response.choices[0].message.content
57
58 # Main function that integrates Google Search, Web Scraping, and LLM Answering
```

```

59 def answer_from_google(query, api_key, search_engine_id, llm_api_key, num_results
60   =3):
61   urls = search_google(query, api_key, search_engine_id, num_results)
62
63   extracted_content = []
64   for url in urls:
65     content = scrape_website(url)
66     extracted_content.append(f"\n--- Source: {url} ---\n{content}")
67
68   # Combine all extracted content for LLM input
69   full_text = "\n\n".join(extracted_content)
70
71   prompt = f"Summarize the following content and answer the question: {query}\n\n{full_text}"
72
73   return generate_answer(prompt, llm_api_key)
74
75 # Example usage:
76 API_KEY = SERPAPI_KEY # Correct Google API Key
77 SEARCH_ENGINE_ID = search_engine_id # Custom Search Engine ID
78
79 query = "Tell me about EUMETNET Artificial Intelligence Programme"
80 answer = answer_from_google(query, API_KEY, SEARCH_ENGINE_ID, LL_M_API_KEY,
81   num_results=3)

```

display

```

1 from IPython.display import display, Markdown
2 display(Markdown(answer))

```

Sample Output:

The EUMETNET Artificial Intelligence (AI) Programme, launched in January 2024, is a collaborative initiative that brings together 16 National Meteorological and Hydrological Services (NMHSs) within Europe, along with ECMWF (European Centre for Medium-Range Weather Forecasts) and EUMETSAT (European Organisation for the Exploitation of Meteorological Satellites). Managed by Prof. Dr. Roland Potthast from the German National Meteorological Service (DWD), the program spans five years and is structured into three main components focusing on Weather, Climate, and Environmental Applications.

Key components of the program include:

Data Curation and Products: Leveraging satellite data and meteorological observations.
 Analysis, Modelling, and Ensembles: Involving extensive modeling and forecasting initiatives.

Communication and Training: This includes a series of workshops aimed at fostering collaboration among meteorological services, with the first workshop scheduled for June 5-6, 2024.

The program is designed to enhance AI applications in meteorology by exploring innovative techniques that allow for enhanced weather predictions, particularly for complex events, through the rapid analysis of vast amounts of meteorological data. AI and Machine

Learning (ML) are seen as tools for creating more accurate and personalized weather forecasts while also enabling advanced simulations for climate modeling.

EUMETSAT's involvement particularly focuses on the integration of AI techniques to improve the usage of satellite data, as well as contribute to a culture of openness and collaboration within the meteorological community.

Summary:

EUMETNET's AI Programme aims to innovate meteorological applications through collaboration among NMHSs in Europe, leveraging AI and ML for improved weather predictions and analysis. The program focuses on data curation, modeling, and training through workshops to enhance productivity and accuracy in weather services.

Chapter 8

Python Packages

Python has a rich ecosystem of libraries for scientific computing, data analysis, and geospatial processing. This chapter introduces important packages that complement Python's core functionality, providing efficient tools for working with structured data, performing computations, and visualizing results.

8.1 Review of the Python Standard Library

Python includes a comprehensive standard library that provides built-in functionality for various tasks. The following table lists some of the most commonly used standard library modules:

Module	Description
os	Provides functions for interacting with the operating system.
sys	Gives access to system-specific parameters and functions.
math	Offers mathematical functions such as trigonometry, logarithms, and factorial.
random	Generates pseudo-random numbers and selections.
datetime	Handles date and time manipulation.
collections	Provides specialized container datatypes like namedtuples and defaultdicts.
itertools	Implements fast, memory-efficient iterators.
functools	Contains higher-order functions like memoization (lru_cache).
json	Allows parsing and generation of JSON data.
tempfile	Creates temporary files and directories.
logging	Offers flexible logging utilities.
argparse	Parses command-line arguments.
shutil	Performs high-level file operations.
pathlib	Modern alternative to os.path for handling filesystem paths.
subprocess	Runs shell commands and external processes.
threading	Provides concurrency using threads.
multiprocessing	Supports parallel execution of code.
asyncio	Provides asynchronous I/O and event loops.
http	Supports HTTP client and server operations.
urllib	Fetches data across the web.
sqlite3	Provides a lightweight database engine.
re	Implements regular expressions.

8.1.1 Working with the OS and Filesystem

The `os` and `pathlib` modules allow interaction with the operating system and filesystem.

Listing Files in a Directory

```
1 import os
2
3 # List all files in the current directory
4 files = os.listdir('.')
5 print(files)
```

Using Pathlib for File Paths

```
1 from pathlib import Path
2
3 # Create a path object and check if a file exists
4 path = Path("example.txt")
5 print("File exists:", path.exists())
```

8.1.2 Working with JSON Data

The `json` module is used to parse and generate JSON data.

Parsing and Writing JSON Data

```
1 import json
2
3 data = {"name": "Alice", "age": 30}
4 json_str = json.dumps(data)
5 print(json_str)
6
7 # Convert JSON string back to dictionary
8 decoded = json.loads(json_str)
9 print(decoded["name"])
```

8.1.3 Running External Commands

The `subprocess` module allows running system commands from Python.

Executing a Shell Command

```
1 import subprocess
2
3 # Run a shell command and capture its output
4 result = subprocess.run(["echo", "Hello, World!"], capture_output=True, text=True)
5 print(result.stdout)
```

8.1.4 Using Regular Expressions

The `re` module provides powerful pattern matching capabilities.

Matching Patterns with Regular Expressions

```
1 import re
2
3 text = "My email is example@example.com"
4 match = re.search(r"[\w.-]+@[\\w.-]+", text)
5 if match:
6     print("Found email:", match.group())
```

This section has introduced key components of the Python standard library, demonstrating their practical usage through examples.

8.2 Xarray - Multi-dimensional labeled Data

Xarray is a powerful library designed for working with multi-dimensional labeled data. It is particularly useful for handling NetCDF files and scientific datasets, making it an essential tool for climate and weather data analysis.

8.2.1 Creating and Manipulating Xarray DataArrays

An Xarray DataArray is a fundamental data structure representing labeled, multi-dimensional arrays.

Creating a DataArray

```
1 import xarray as xr
2 import numpy as np
3
4 # Create a simple DataArray
5 data = np.random.rand(4, 3)
6 da = xr.DataArray(data, dims={"time", "location"}, coords={"time": range(4), "location": ['A', 'B', 'C']})
7 print(da)
```

8.2.2 Using Xarray for NetCDF Files

Xarray provides seamless integration with NetCDF files for reading and writing datasets.

Reading a NetCDF File

```
1 dataset = xr.open_dataset("example.nc")
2 print(dataset)
```

Writing a NetCDF File

```
1 dataset.to_netcdf("output.nc")
```

8.2.3 Data Selection and Operations

Xarray allows intuitive selection and computation on data.

Selecting Data by Coordinates

```
1 selected = da.sel(time=2)
2 print(selected)
```

Applying Mathematical Operations

```
1 mean_value = da.mean(dim="time")
2 print(mean_value)
```

8.3 Pandas - Data Frames and Analysis Package

Pandas is a fundamental package for data analysis, offering powerful tools for manipulating tabular data similar to spreadsheets or SQL databases.

8.3.1 Creating DataFrames

Creating a Pandas DataFrame

```
1 import pandas as pd
2
3 data = {"A": [1, 2, 3], "B": [4, 5, 6]}
4 df = pd.DataFrame(data)
5 print(df)
```

8.3.2 Data Selection and Filtering

Filtering Data

```
1 filtered = df[df["A"] > 1]
2 print(filtered)
```

8.4 SciPy Scientific Computing, Optimization and Statistics

SciPy extends NumPy with additional functionality for scientific computing, such as optimization, signal processing, and statistical analysis.

8.4.1 Optimization Example

Finding a Minimum Using SciPy

```
1 from scipy.optimize import minimize
2
3 def func(x):
4     return (x - 3) ** 2
```

```
5
6 result = minimize(func, x0=0)
7 print(result.x)
```

8.5 Scikit-Learn - Machine Learning, Classification, Regression

Scikit-learn is a machine learning library that provides tools for classification, regression, clustering, and preprocessing.

8.5.1 Fitting a Linear Model and Clustering Algorithms

Linear Regression with Scikit-Learn

```
1 from sklearn.linear_model import LinearRegression
2 import numpy as np
3
4 X = np.array([[1], [2], [3], [4]])
5 y = np.array([2, 3, 5, 7])
6
7 model = LinearRegression()
8 model.fit(X, y)
9 print("Predictions:", model.predict(X))
```

The notebook `scikit-learn_cth_clustering.ipynb` provides a compact demonstration of hierarchical clustering on synthetic cloud top height (CTH) data. It uses agglomerative clustering to group similar CTH profiles and evaluates the results visually.

Step 1: Dataset Preparation: The notebook loads or generates sample data representing CTH structures. These are likely extracted from satellite or model fields, reshaped into 1D or 2D patterns suitable for clustering.

Step 2: Hierarchical Clustering: Using `AgglomerativeClustering` from scikit-learn, the notebook clusters the CTH patterns into a small number of representative types. This helps identify structural differences in convective growth.

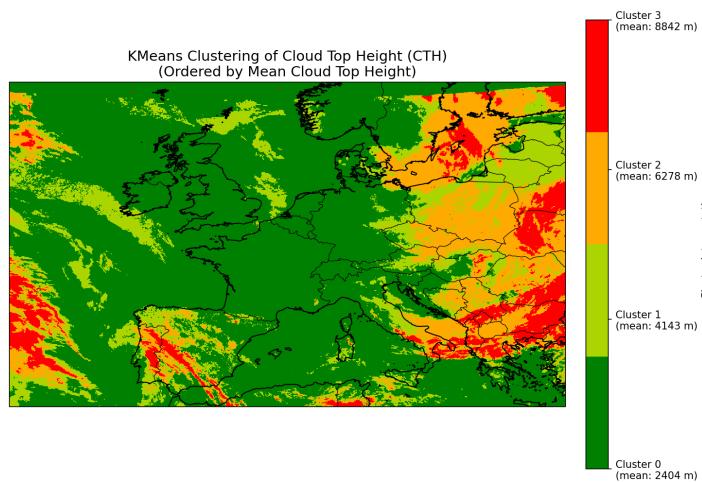


Figure 8.1: Clustered convective profiles, sorted and labeled.

Step 3: Comparison of Results: To validate the clustering, side-by-side comparisons are made showing original vs. clustered versions, or showing cluster representatives.

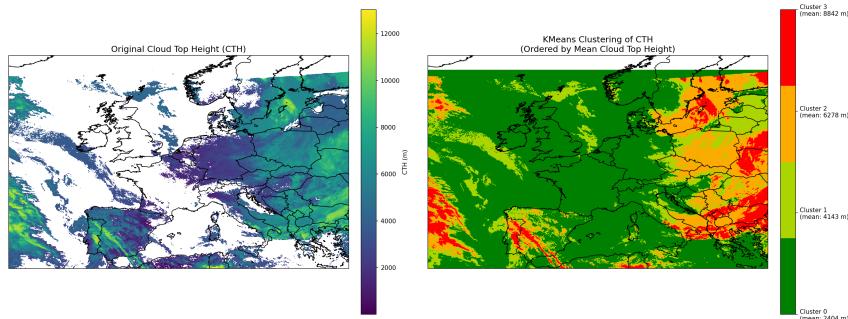


Figure 8.2: Side-by-side comparison of original and clustered convective patterns.

Step 4: Visual Interpretation: The notebook further evaluates clusters by plotting their motion and structure. For example, flow vectors and growth regions may be overlaid.

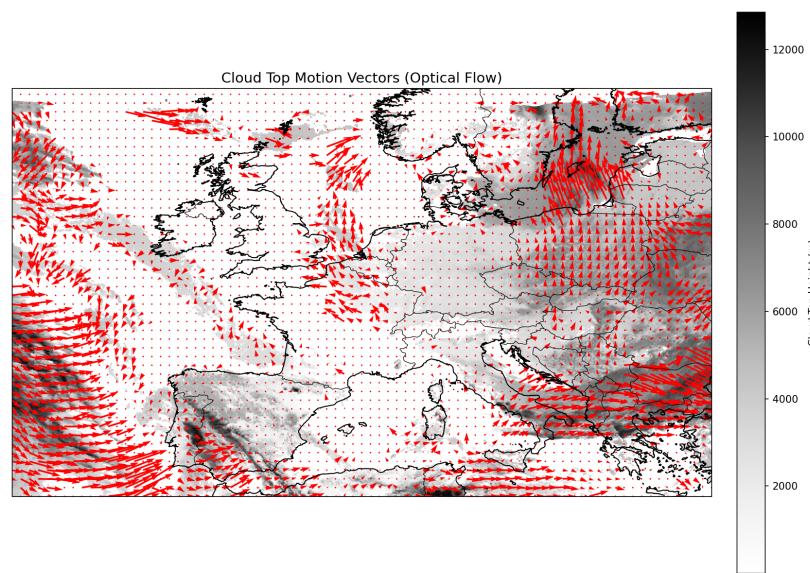


Figure 8.3: Estimated motion vectors over convective regions.

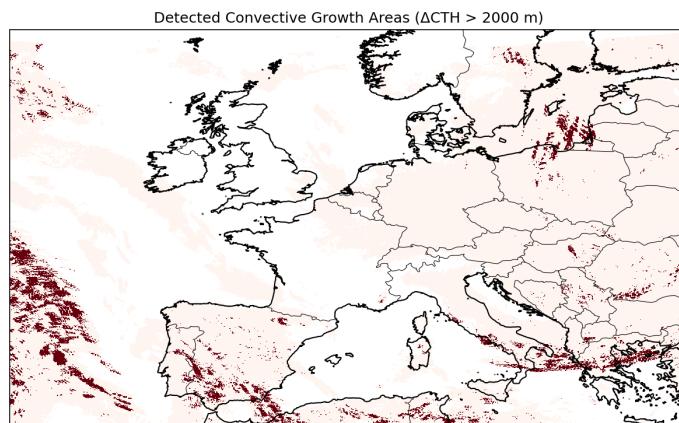


Figure 8.4: Identification of regions with rapid vertical growth in CTH.

Step 5: Map-Based Output: Final outputs show maps of maximum change, differences, and derived quantities based on the clustering.

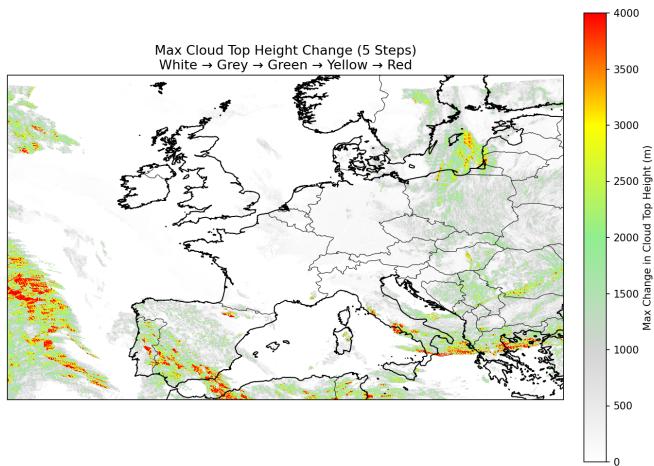


Figure 8.5: Map showing maximum CTH changes across the domain.

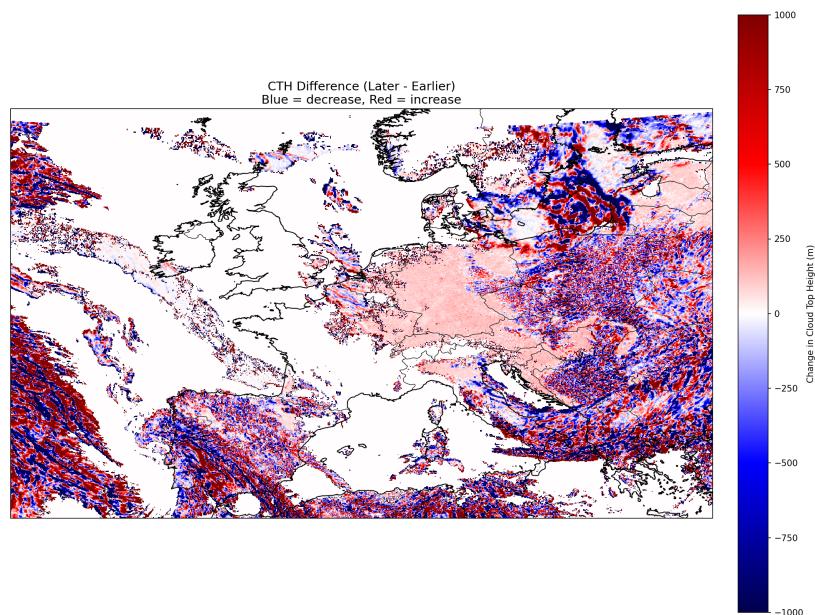


Figure 8.6: Difference map between cluster means and actual values.

The combination of clustering and visualization in this notebook provides insight into common convective structures, their dynamics, and how they evolve over time.

Chapter 9

Multimodal LLMs

9.1 Fundamentals of Multimodal Large Language Models

Multimodal Large Language Models (MLLMs) extend traditional LLMs by incorporating multiple data modalities, such as text, images, audio, and video, enabling more comprehensive reasoning and interaction with diverse data sources.

Fine-Tuning a Transformer Model for Coastal Weather Forecasting

Introduction

Our introductory example describes the implementation of a fine-tuned Transformer model for processing wind field data over the North Sea. The model is based on a pretrained T5 architecture and is adapted to generate textual descriptions of wind conditions from numerical wind field inputs. The main components include synthetic wind field generation, visualization, dataset creation, model training, and evaluation.

Device Setup and Dependencies

The implementation begins with setting up the necessary libraries, including torch for deep learning, transformers for handling the T5 model, and cartopy for geospatial visualization. The computation is performed on a *CUDA* device if available:

Device Setup

```
1 import torch
2
3 device = torch.device("cuda" if torch.cuda.is_available() else "cpu")
4 print(device)
```

Generating Synthetic Wind Fields

Wind field data is generated using a grid-based approach. A base wind direction is selected, and random variations of ± 10 degrees are applied at each grid point to simulate realistic wind

fluctuations. The wind speed follows a controlled distribution:

Generate Synthetic Wind Fields

```

1 def generate_wind_field(grid_size=10, base_wind_dir=315, wind_speed=None):
2     lon = np.linspace(5, 10, grid_size)
3     lat = np.linspace(53, 56, grid_size)
4     LON, LAT = np.meshgrid(lon, lat)
5
6     theta_variation = np.random.uniform(-10, 10, size=(grid_size, grid_size))
7     theta = np.deg2rad(270 - (base_wind_dir + theta_variation))
8
9     U = wind_speed * np.cos(theta)
10    V = wind_speed * np.sin(theta)
11
12    return LON, LAT, U, V, wind_speed

```

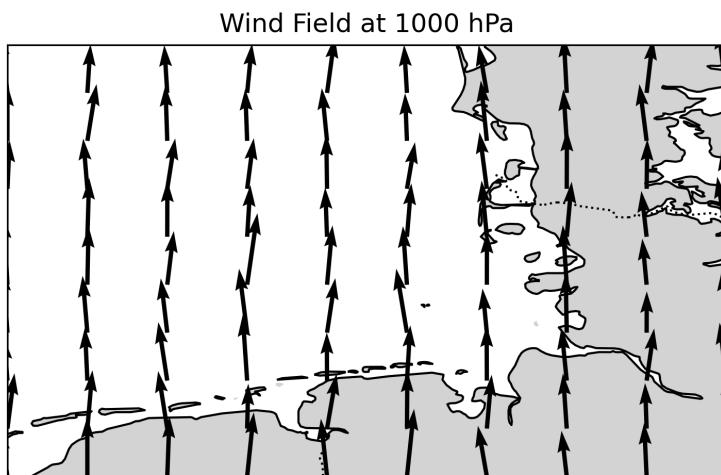


Figure 9.1: Coastal Wind with example text description: "Strong northerly winds with speeds around 15.0 m/s over the North Sea".

Visualizing Wind Fields

Wind fields are displayed using Cartopy, showing vectors representing wind direction and magnitude. The following function renders the wind data on a map projection:

Plot Wind Fields

```

1 def plot_wind_field(LON, LAT, U, V, title="Wind Field at 1000 hPa"):
2     fig, ax = plt.subplots(figsize=(6, 4), \
3                           subplot_kw={'projection': ccrs.PlateCarree()})
4     ax.set_extent([5, 10, 53, 56], crs=ccrs.PlateCarree())
5     ax.add_feature(cfeature.COASTLINE)
6     ax.add_feature(cfeature.BORDERS, linestyle=':')
7     ax.add_feature(cfeature.LAND, facecolor='lightgray')
8     ax.quiver(LON, LAT, U, V, scale=200, transform=ccrs.PlateCarree())

```

```

9     ax.set_title(title)
10    plt.show()

```

Generating Textual Descriptions

The model converts wind field data into descriptive text by categorizing wind intensity and associating wind direction with predefined labels. Wind speed values are rounded to predefined levels:

Generate Text Descriptions

```

1 def generate_text_description(wind_speed, wind_dir):
2     intensity = "strong" if np.mean(wind_speed) > 12 else "moderate" if np.mean(
3         wind_speed) > 6 else "light"
4     directions = {0: "northerly", 45: "northeasterly", 90: "easterly", 135: "
5         southeasterly",
6             180: "southerly", 225: "southwesterly", 270: "westerly", 315: "
7             northwesterly"}
8     direction = directions.get(round(wind_dir), "variable")
9     approx_speed = [0, 1, 2, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30][np.argmin(np.abs([0, 1, 2, 5,
10, 15, 20, 25, 30] - np.mean(wind_speed)))]
10    return f"{intensity.capitalize()} {direction} winds with speeds around {
11        approx_speed} m/s over the North Sea."

```

Training the Transformer Model

The fine-tuning process uses a pretrained *T5-small* model. Wind fields are encoded as structured text, and corresponding descriptions are used as target outputs. The model is trained using an Adam optimizer with a learning rate of 5×10^{-5} :

Train Transformer Model

```

1 def train_transformer(text_samples, wind_fields, num_epochs=10):
2     tokenizer = T5Tokenizer.from_pretrained("t5-small")
3     model = T5ForConditionalGeneration.from_pretrained("t5-small").to(device)
4     optimizer = torch.optim.AdamW(model.parameters(), lr=5e-5)
5
6     loss_history = []
7     start_time = time.time()
8
9     for epoch in range(num_epochs):
10        epoch_start = time.time()
11        total_loss = 0
12
13        for wind, text in zip(wind_fields, text_samples):
14            U, V, wind_speed = wind
15            wind_input = f"Wind field: U: {' '.join(map(str, np.round(U.flatten()[:20], 2)))}; V: {' '.join(map(str, np.round(V.flatten()[:20], 2)))}; Speed: "
16            input_ids = tokenizer.encode(wind_input, return_tensors="pt",

```

```

  truncation=True, max_length=512).to(device)
17      labels = tokenizer.encode(text, return_tensors="pt", truncation=True,
18      max_length=512).to(device)
19      outputs = model(input_ids=input_ids, labels=labels)
20      loss = outputs.loss
21      optimizer.zero_grad()
22      loss.backward()
23      optimizer.step()
24      total_loss += loss.item()
25
26      avg_loss = total_loss / len(text_samples)
27      loss_history.append(avg_loss)
28      print(f"Epoch {epoch+1}/{num_epochs} | Loss: {avg_loss:.4f}")
29
30  return model, tokenizer, loss_history

```

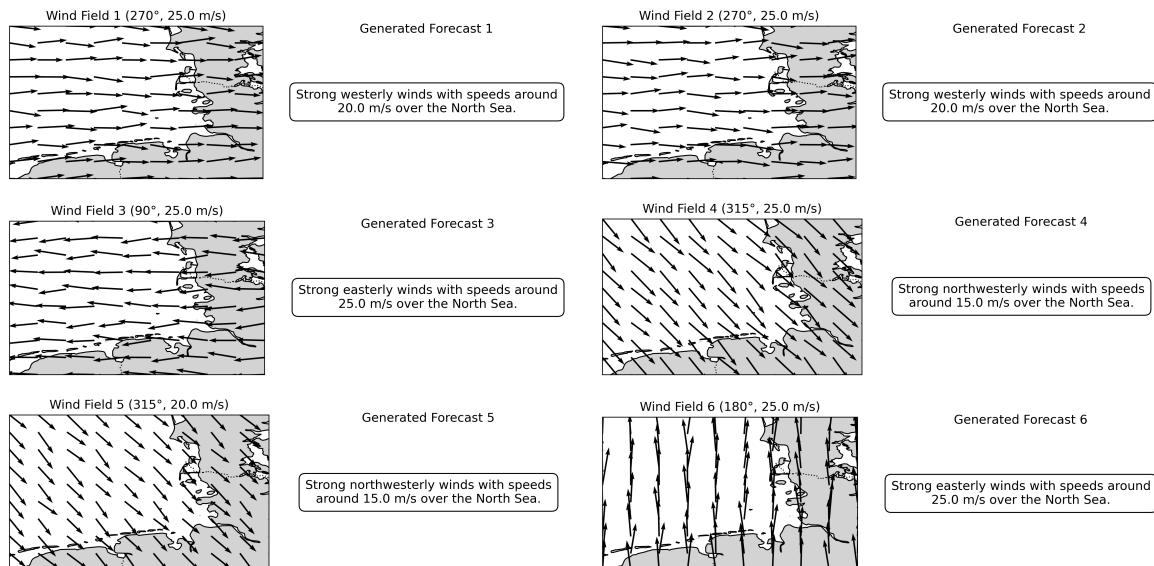


Figure 9.2: Forecast of Coastal Weather at Different Time Steps

Generating Forecasts

Once trained, the model can generate textual descriptions from new wind fields:

Generate Forecasts

```

1 def generate_forecast(model, tokenizer, wind_field):
2     U, V = wind_field
3     wind_input = f"Wind field: U: {' '.join(map(str, np.round(U.flatten()[:20], 2))}); V: {' '.join(map(str, np.round(V.flatten()[:20], 2)))}."
4     input_ids = tokenizer.encode(wind_input, return_tensors="pt", truncation=True,
5     max_length=512).to(device)
6     output = model.generate(input_ids)
7     return tokenizer.decode(output[0], skip_special_tokens=True)

```

9.2 Radar Data Access and AI Interpretation

This section documents the steps taken in the Jupyter notebook to access, process, visualize, and interpret radar reflectivity data from the German Weather Service (DWD), using AI-based image analysis via the OpenAI API. The steps are implemented in Python and follow a modular structure.

9.2.1 1. Downloading the Radar Composite

Radar composite data in HDF5 format was obtained from the DWD Open Data server. The file was selected from the /weather/radar/composite/hx/ directory, which typically contains reflectivity products. The latest file was identified and downloaded automatically.

```
python

1 import requests
2 from bs4 import BeautifulSoup
3 from urllib.parse import urljoin
4
5 base_url = "https://opendata.dwd.de/weather/radar/composite/hx/"
6 response = requests.get(base_url)
7 soup = BeautifulSoup(response.text, "html.parser")
8
9 hd5_files = sorted([
10     a.get("href") for a in soup.find_all("a")
11     if "composite_hx" in a.get("href", "") and "-hd5" in a.get("href", "")
12 ])
13
14 if hd5_files:
15     latest_file = hd5_files[-1]
16     download_url = urljoin(base_url, latest_file)
17     with open("radar.h5", "wb") as f:
18         f.write(requests.get(download_url).content)
```

9.2.2 2. Reading and Decoding Reflectivity Data

The reflectivity field was read from the dataset1/data1/data group in the HDF5 file. The physical reflectivity values (in dBZ) were reconstructed using gain and offset parameters stored in the metadata.

```
python

1 import h5py
2 import numpy as np
3
4 with h5py.File("radar.h5", "r") as f:
5     raw = f["dataset1/data1/data"][:]
6     what = f["dataset1/data1/what"]
```

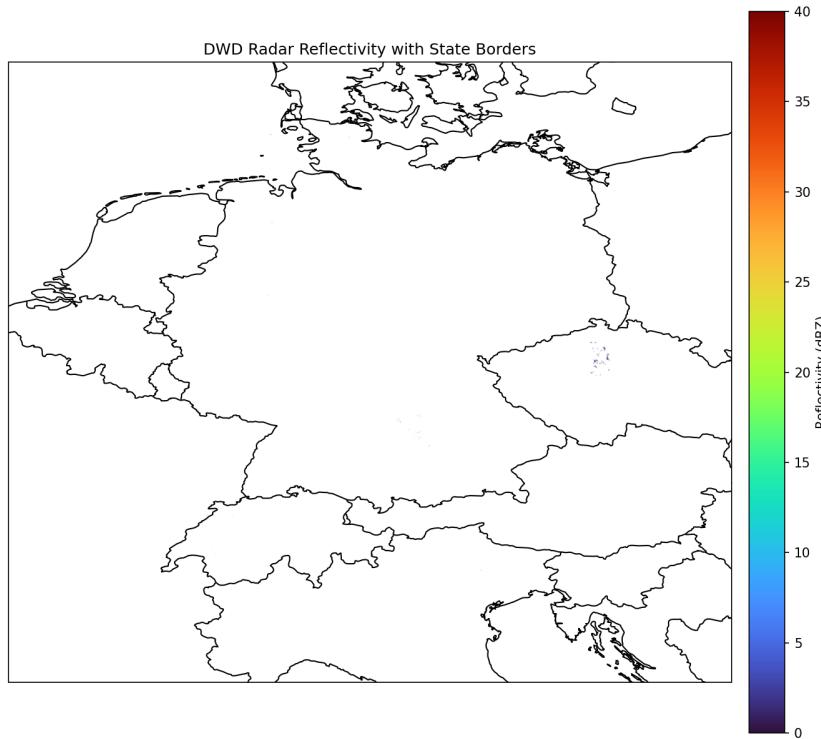


Figure 9.3: Decoded radar reflectivity over Germany with state borders. White regions indicate no signal or missing data.

```
7     gain = what.attrs.get("gain", 1.0)
8     offset = what.attrs.get("offset", 0.0)
9     reflectivity = raw.astype(np.float32) * gain + offset
10    reflectivity[(raw == 0) | (raw == 65535) | (reflectivity < 0)] = np.nan
```

9.2.3 3. Plotting the Radar Composite

The radar reflectivity is visualized on a map using Cartopy. The extent was set to cover Germany and surrounding countries. Missing values were shown in white to emphasize actual radar returns.

python

```
1 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
2 import cartopy.crs as ccrs
3 import cartopy.feature as cfeature
4 from matplotlib import colormaps
```

```

5
6 cmap = colormaps.get_cmap("turbo").copy()
7 cmap.set_bad(color='white')
8
9 extent = [3.0, 17.0, 44.0, 56.0]
10 masked = np.ma.masked_invalid(reflectivity)
11
12 plt.figure(figsize=(12, 10))
13 ax = plt.axes(projection=ccrs.PlateCarree())
14 ax.set_extent(extent)
15 im = ax.imshow(masked, extent=extent, cmap=cmap, vmin=0, vmax=40,
16                 origin='lower', transform=ccrs.PlateCarree())
17
18 ax.add_feature(cfeature.BORDERS)
19 ax.coastlines(resolution='10m')
20 cbar = plt.colorbar(im, ax=ax)
21 cbar.set_label("Reflectivity (dBZ)")
22 plt.title("DWD Radar Reflectivity with State Borders")
23 plt.savefig("radar_map_germany.png", dpi=150)
24 plt.show()

```

9.2.4 4. Interpretation Using OpenAI GPT-4 Vision

To generate a natural-language interpretation of the radar image, the processed PNG was base64-encoded and sent to the OpenAI API using the GPT-4-Turbo model with vision capabilities.

- The request includes both a text prompt and the radar image.
- The result is a textual interpretation of reflectivity patterns, estimated intensity, and structure classification (e.g. stratiform or convective).

python

```

1 from openai import OpenAI
2 from dotenv import load_dotenv
3 import base64, os
4 from IPython.display import Markdown, display
5
6 load_dotenv()
7 client = OpenAI(api_key=os.getenv("OPENAI_API_KEY"))
8
9 with open("radar_map_germany.png", "rb") as img:
10     encoded = base64.b64encode(img.read()).decode("utf-8")
11
12 response = client.chat.completions.create(
13     model="gpt-4-turbo",
14     messages=[
15         {"role": "user", "content": [

```

```

16         {"type": "text", "text": "Interpret this radar reflectivity image from
Germany. Describe precipitation areas, intensity, and structure."},
17         {"type": "image_url", "image_url": {
18             "url": f"data:image/png;base64,{encoded}"}
19         }
20     ]}
21 ],
22 max_tokens=800,
23 )
24
25 interpretation = response.choices[0].message.content
26 display(Markdown(interpretation))

```

Here is the outcome of the image interpretations, which OpenAI provides.

This image of radar reflectivity from Germany depicts various levels of precipitation intensity across different regions, as indicated by the color scale on the right. The color scale ranges from 0 dBZ, representing no precipitation, to 40 dBZ, indicating heavy precipitation.

In this image:

Northwestern Germany: There appears to be no significant precipitation as the colors are in the lower range of the scale (0-5 dBZ), which is indicative of clear or very light precipitation conditions.

Northeastern Germany: Similar to the northwest, this region also shows minimal reflectivity values, indicating little to no precipitation.

Central and Southern Germany: These areas also display minimal radar reflectivity with dBZ values primarily in the range of 0-5 dBZ. There seem to be no significant precipitation events occurring in these regions at the time this image was captured.

Western and Southwestern Germany: These regions are predominantly clear, with a few areas perhaps having very light precipitation as indicated by slightly higher, but still minimal dBZ values.

There are no distinct areas of high dBZ values (e.g., >20 dBZ) that would suggest moderate to heavy rainfall or convective activity (such as thunderstorms) anywhere on the map. Therefore, the image overall does not show any signs of significant convective structures such as thunderstorm cells, which would typically be indicated by localized, high-intensity dBZ readings.

All in all, the weather across Germany during the period represented by this reflectivity image seems to be largely calm and free of significant precipitation events, with only scattered, very light precipitation or clear conditions throughout. The absence of any high dBZ values indicates an absence of strong convective activities like thunderstorms, which are typically characterized by sudden, intense rainfall indicated by higher dBZ values.

We note that the interpretation will be billed by standard platforms as shown in the following figure.

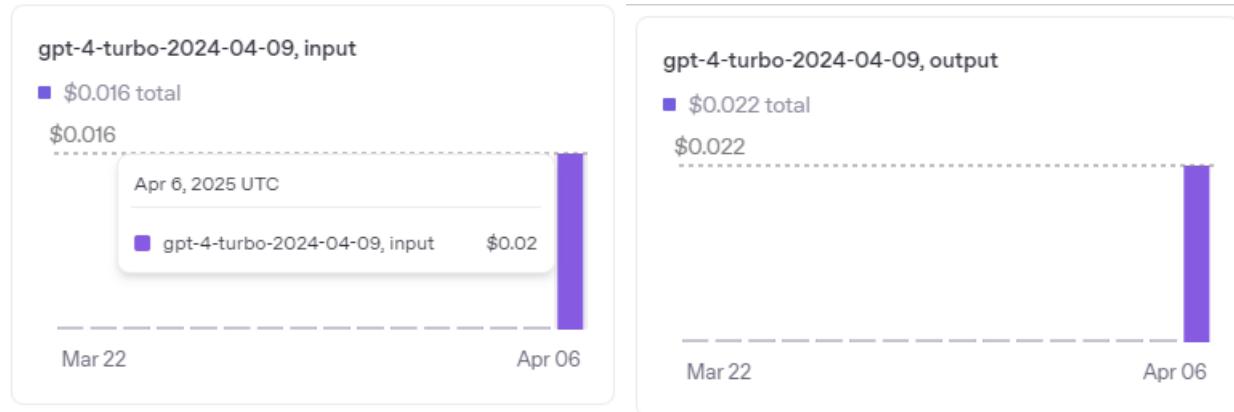


Figure 9.4: Input and Output for image interpretation will cost, here about 2-3 cent per image (in and out summed).

9.3 Cloud Top Height as a Multimodal AI Application

Cloud Top Height (CTH) is a satellite-derived parameter that estimates the altitude of the upper boundary of cloud systems, typically expressed in meters above sea level. It is primarily derived from thermal infrared satellite observations (e.g., from Meteosat SEVIRI), which allow cloud top temperature to be estimated and then converted to height using vertical atmospheric profiles.

High CTH values are generally associated with deep convective systems such as cumulonimbus clouds, while low CTH values are often indicative of stratiform or shallow cloud layers. As such, CTH provides valuable insight into atmospheric structure and storm development, especially in the absence of direct vertical sounding data.

In the context of multimodal AI, CTH maps are well suited for image-text applications, where visual patterns are interpreted in conjunction with meteorological knowledge. Below, we outline several possible use cases for applying multimodal models (e.g., GPT-4 with Vision or Gemini) to CTH data.

9.3.1 Multimodal Use Cases for Cloud Top Height Interpretation

- **CTH Map Interpretation**

Given a single satellite-derived CTH image, a multimodal model can identify regions of high cloud tops (e.g., >10 km), associate them with potential deep convection, and distinguish between different cloud layers. This is useful for nowcasting and synoptic analysis.

- **CTH and Radar Reflectivity Comparison**

A side-by-side analysis of CTH and radar reflectivity fields enables the model to assess where tall clouds are associated with precipitation. This helps in identifying convective cores or in evaluating false alarms, such as high cloud tops without significant rainfall.

- **CTH Overlay with Numerical Weather Prediction (NWP)**

By comparing observed CTH fields with model-predicted convective zones, the AI can evaluate the accuracy of model forecasts, detect missed storms, or highlight overestimates of vertical development. This can support model diagnostics and validation.

- **CTH Threshold-Based Alerting**

AI systems can be tasked with scanning a CTH image and identifying areas exceeding certain height thresholds (e.g., 10,000 m). These regions may be relevant for aviation warnings, thunderstorm alerts, or convective risk assessments.

- **Time-Series or Animation Analysis**

Using a sequence of CTH images, a multimodal model could track the temporal evolution of convective systems. It can describe cloud growth, merging, or dissipation — similar to what a human forecaster might do when watching satellite loops.

- **Natural Language Bulletins from CTH Maps**

The model can automatically generate synoptic summaries or weather briefings based solely on the CTH structure, using meteorological language. This supports automation in forecast generation and situational awareness.

These examples demonstrate the broad potential of combining satellite-derived cloud structure with large multimodal models to extract high-level meteorological insights in a human-readable form.

9.3.2 CTH Map Interpretation

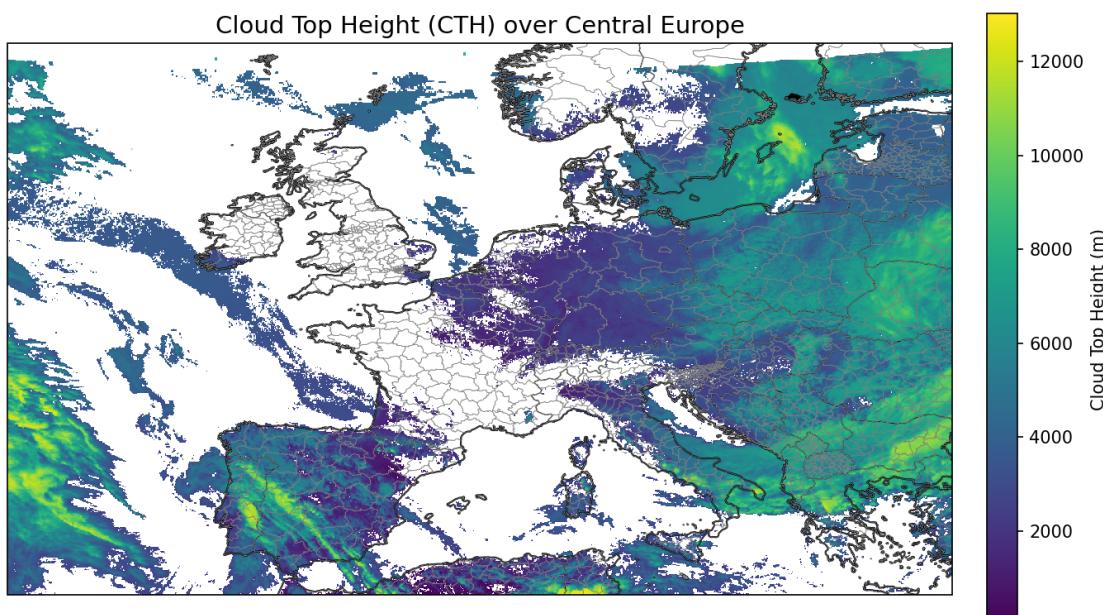


Figure 9.5: Cloud Top Height (CTH) over Central Europe derived from satellite data. Higher cloud tops (green/yellow) are indicative of deep convection; lower tops (purple) represent stratiform or less active cloud fields.

To interpret the satellite-derived CTH image, the notebook performs the following steps:

1. Download the Latest CTH File We start by accessing the latest CTH file from the DWD Open Data server.

python

```

1 import requests
2 from bs4 import BeautifulSoup
3 from urllib.parse import urljoin
4
5 base_url = "https://opendata.dwd.de/weather/satellite/clouds/CTH/"
6 response = requests.get(base_url)
7 soup = BeautifulSoup(response.text, "html.parser")
8
9 cth_files = sorted([
10     link.get("href") for link in soup.find_all("a")
11     if link.get("href", "").endswith(".nc.bz2")
12 ])
13
14 latest_file = cth_files[-1]
15 download_url = urljoin(base_url, latest_file)
16
17 with open("cth_latest.nc.bz2", "wb") as f:
18     f.write(requests.get(download_url).content)

```

2. Decompress and Read the Data The ‘.bz2‘ archive is unpacked, and the cloud top height data is read from the NetCDF file.

python

```

1 import bz2
2 import netCDF4 as nc
3
4 with bz2.BZ2File("cth_latest.nc.bz2") as bz2file:
5     with open("cth_latest.nc", "wb") as ncfile:
6         ncfile.write(bz2file.read())
7
8 ds = nc.Dataset("cth_latest.nc")
9 cth = ds.variables["CTH"][:, :, :]
10 lat = ds.variables["lat"][:]
11 lon = ds.variables["lon"][:]

```

3. Visualize the CTH Field A simple pseudocolor map is created using Matplotlib, where high cloud tops are shown in brighter colors.

python

```

1 import numpy as np
2 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt

```

```

3
4 cth = np.ma.masked_where(cth <= 0, cth)
5
6 plt.figure(figsize=(10, 8))
7 plt.pcolormesh(lon, lat, cth, cmap="viridis", shading="auto")
8 plt.colorbar(label="Cloud Top Height (m)")
9 plt.title("Cloud Top Height (latest observation)")
10 plt.xlabel("Longitude")
11 plt.ylabel("Latitude")
12 plt.grid(True)
13 plt.savefig("cth_map.png", dpi=150)
14 plt.show()

```

4. AI-Based Interpretation with OpenAI Vision. The image is encoded and sent to OpenAI's multimodal model through its platform API for meteorological interpretation.

python

```

from openai import OpenAI
from dotenv import load_dotenv
import os
import base64
from IPython.display import Markdown, display

load_dotenv()
client = OpenAI(api_key=os.getenv("OPENAI_API_KEY"))

with open("cth_map.png", "rb") as image_file:
    base64_image = base64.b64encode(image_file.read()).decode("utf-8")

response = client.chat.completions.create(
    model="gpt-4-turbo",
    messages=[
        {
            "role": "user",
            "content": [
                {
                    "type": "text",
                    "text": (
                        "This is a satellite-derived Cloud Top Height (CTH) image over Europe.\n"
                        "Please interpret the structure shown in the image: \n"
                        "- Identify regions of high or low cloud tops.\n"
                        "- Estimate where deep convection may be present.\n"
                        "- Describe what synoptic or convective features are visible.\n"
                        "- Provide a summary of the possible weather situation."
                    )
                },
                {
                    "type": "image_url",
                    "image_url": {
                        "url": f"data:image/png;base64,{base64_image}"
                    }
                }
            ]
        ],
        max_tokens=800,
    )
)

```

```
interpretation = response.choices[0].message.content
display(Markdown(interpretation))
```

Here is the outcome of the image interpretations, which our script based on the OpenAI API provides.

Identification of Regions of High and Low Cloud Tops:

High Cloud Tops:

Central Northern Europe, especially in the yellow-colored area over central Sweden and parts of Norway, displays very high cloud tops that exceed 10,000 meters. Some high cloud tops are also noticeable over the sea directly west of the Iberian peninsula.

Low Cloud Tops:

Major parts of the European mainland have lower cloud tops, particularly noticeable in France, Germany, and extending eastward across Poland into parts of Russia (indicated by purple to blue colors), where cloud tops range from 2000 to 6000 meters.

Potential Areas of Deep Convection:

The high cloud tops observed particularly in central parts of Scandinavia (central Sweden and nearby areas) are potential indicators of deep convective activity. Typically, cloud tops reaching or exceeding heights around 10,000 meters suggest the presence of cumulonimbus clouds, which are associated with heavy rainfall, thunderstorms, and potential severe weather events.

Visible Synoptic or Convective Features:

An intense convective system appears to be over Central Scandinavia, supported by the very high cloud tops as indicated by the yellow coloration. This system may suggest the development or presence of a strong weather front, potentially a cold front given its structure and scale.

Widespread lower cloud tops across much of Western and Eastern Europe might be associated with stable weather patterns or widespread stratiform clouds usually seen with settled conditions or behind a front.

Possible Summary of the Weather Situation:

The presence of high, deep convective cloud tops over Central Scandinavia suggests ongoing or developing strong weather activities, likely associated with significant rainfall, thunderstorms, or possibly snow if temperatures are low enough.

In contrast, much of the rest of the Central European region, characterized by lower cloud tops, might be experiencing more stable and milder weather. This could manifest as cloudy but largely dry conditions, potentially following the passage of a weather front.

The contrasting cloud top heights from the west to the east may indicate a strong weather gradient, potentially impacting weather conditions rapidly over short distances in the region.

In conclusion, the satellite-derived CTH image suggests significant weather activity, particularly over Scandinavia, with potential impacts including precipitation and more pronounced weather events, while a quieter weather regime may prevail over large parts of Western and Central Europe.

Chapter 10

Further ML Architectures and Topics

10.1 Diffusion Networks

10.2 Using GPUs for Training

10.2.1 Checking GPU Availability and Installing Required Packages

To use GPUs in Python, we need to install and verify the necessary packages such as PyTorch.

Checking GPU Availability

```
1 import torch
2
3 # Check if CUDA (NVIDIA GPU) is available
4 device = torch.device("cuda" if torch.cuda.is_available() else "cpu")
5 print(f"Using device: {device}")
6
7 # Check how many GPUs are available
8 print(f"Number of GPUs available: {torch.cuda.device_count()}")
9
10 # Get GPU name if available
11 if torch.cuda.is_available():
12     print(f"GPU Name: {torch.cuda.get_device_name(0)}")
```

10.2.2 Exploring Tensors on the GPU

Once we load tensors onto the GPU, we can verify their placement and explore GPU memory usage.

Working with Tensors on GPU

```

1 # Create a tensor and move it to the GPU
2 tensor_cpu = torch.randn(5, 5)
3 tensor_gpu = tensor_cpu.to("cuda") if torch.cuda.is_available() else tensor_cpu
4
5 print("Tensor on GPU:", tensor_gpu)
6 print("Tensor Device:", tensor_gpu.device)
7
8 # Check GPU memory usage if available
9 if torch.cuda.is_available():
10     print("Allocated GPU Memory:", torch.cuda.memory_allocated() / 1e6, "MB")
11     print("Cached GPU Memory:", torch.cuda.memory_reserved() / 1e6, "MB")

```

10.2.3 Training a Neural Network with GPU Acceleration

In this example, we train a deep neural network on a synthetic dataset, comparing training times on CPU and GPU.

Training a Neural Network on GPU

```

1 import torch.nn as nn
2 import torch.optim as optim
3 import time
4 import numpy as np
5 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
6
7 # Generate synthetic training data
8 def true_function(x):
9     return 2.0 * torch.sin(3.0 * x) + 0.5 * torch.cos(5.0 * x) + 0.2 * x**2 - 0.3
* x + 1.0
10
11 # Create dataset
12 x_train = torch.linspace(-5, 5, 500).view(-1, 1)
13 y_train = true_function(x_train)
14
15 # Define a deeper neural network
16 class ComplexNN(nn.Module):
17     def __init__(self):
18         super(ComplexNN, self).__init__()
19         self.fc = nn.Sequential(
20             nn.Linear(1, 128),
21             nn.ReLU(),
22             nn.BatchNorm1d(128),
23             nn.Linear(128, 128),
24             nn.Tanh(),
25             nn.Linear(128, 128),
26             nn.ReLU(),

```

```
27         nn.Linear(128, 128),  
28         nn.Tanh(),  
29         nn.Linear(128, 128),  
30         nn.ReLU(),  
31         nn.Linear(128, 1)  
32     )  
33  
34     def forward(self, x):  
35         return self.fc(x)  
36  
37 # Training function  
38 def train_model(device, epochs=2000):  
39     model = ComplexNN().to(device)  
40     criterion = nn.MSELoss()  
41     optimizer = optim.Adam(model.parameters(), lr=0.01)  
42  
43     x_train_device = x_train.to(device)  
44     y_train_device = y_train.to(device)  
45  
46     start_time = time.time()  
47     for epoch in range(epochs):  
48         optimizer.zero_grad()  
49         y_pred = model(x_train_device)  
50         loss = criterion(y_pred, y_train_device)  
51         loss.backward()  
52         optimizer.step()  
53  
54         if epoch % 200 == 0:  
55             print(f"Epoch {epoch}: Loss = {loss.item():.6f}")  
56  
57     elapsed_time = time.time() - start_time  
58     print(f"Training completed in {elapsed_time:.3f} seconds on {device}")  
59     return model, elapsed_time  
60  
61 # Train on CPU  
62 print("\nTraining on CPU...")  
63 cpu_model, cpu_time = train_model(torch.device("cpu"))  
64  
65 # Train on GPU (if available)  
66 if torch.cuda.is_available():  
67     print("\nTraining on GPU...")  
68     gpu_model, gpu_time = train_model(torch.device("cuda"))  
69 else:  
70     gpu_time = None  
71  
72 # Compare results  
73 print("\n--- Training Time Comparison ---")  
74 print(f"CPU Training Time: {cpu_time:.3f} seconds")  
75 if gpu_time:
```

```
76     print(f"GPU Training Time: {gpu_time:.3f} seconds")
77     print(f"Speedup Factor: {cpu_time / gpu_time:.2f}x")
```

10.2.4 Comparing Model Predictions on CPU and GPU

After training, we compare the predictions from both CPU and GPU models.

Visualizing Predictions

```
1 x_test = torch.linspace(-5, 5, 500).view(-1, 1)
2 y_true = true_function(x_test)
3
4 cpu_model.eval()
5 y_cpu_pred = cpu_model(x_test).detach()
6
7 if torch.cuda.is_available():
8     gpu_model.eval()
9     y_gpu_pred = gpu_model(x_test.to("cuda")).cpu().detach()
10
11 plt.figure(figsize=(8, 5))
12 plt.plot(x_test, y_true, label="True Function", linestyle="dashed", color="black")
13 plt.plot(x_test, y_cpu_pred, label="CPU Prediction", color="red")
14 if gpu_time:
15     plt.plot(x_test, y_gpu_pred, label="GPU Prediction", color="blue")
16 plt.legend()
17 plt.title("CPU vs GPU Model Prediction - Complex NN")
18 plt.xlabel("x")
19 plt.ylabel("y")
20 plt.show()
```

This chapter provides a comprehensive guide on utilizing GPUs for deep learning applications, from checking GPU availability to training and comparing model performance on different devices.

10.3 Dynamic Graphs in Neural Networks for Observation Processing

Chapter 11

Agents and Coding with LLM

11.1 Introduction to Automated Coding with LLM

Large Language Models (LLMs) can be leveraged to assist in writing code, generating scripts, and automating tasks. This section introduces a simple example where we generate Python code, save it, and execute it dynamically.

11.1.1 Generating and Executing Code from an LLM

To interact with an LLM and generate code, we can use OpenAI's API. Below is an example of how to generate, save, and execute Python code.

Generating and Running Python Code from LLM

```
1 import openai
2 import os
3
4 def get_code_from_llm(prompt):
5     client = openai.Client(api_key=os.getenv("OPENAI_API_KEY"))
6     response = client.chat.completions.create(
7         model="gpt-4o-mini",
8         messages=[
9             {"role": "system", "content": "You are an AI coder. Provide only
10 executable Python code."},
11             {"role": "user", "content": prompt}
12         ]
13     )
14     return response.choices[0].message.content.strip()
15
16 code = get_code_from_llm("Write a Python function that computes the Fibonacci
17 sequence up to n.")
18
19 # Save code to a file
```

```
18 with open("generated_script.py", "w") as f:  
19     f.write(code)  
20  
21 # Execute the script  
22 exec(open("generated_script.py").read())
```

11.2 Survey of Agent Frameworks

There are several agent-based frameworks that integrate LLMs for code execution and automation. Two common ones include:

- **LangChain**: A framework designed for building applications with LLMs that integrate memory, reasoning, and chaining capabilities.
- **Auto-GPT**: An autonomous agent framework that can self-prompt, plan, and execute tasks using LLMs.

11.3 Example 1: Using LangChain for Code Execution

LangChain provides tools to let LLMs execute tasks dynamically, such as writing and running Python code.

11.3.1 Installation

Install LangChain and OpenAI API:

Installing LangChain

```
1 !pip install langchain openai
```

11.3.2 Using LangChain to Automate Code Execution

LangChain Script for Automated Coding

```
1 from langchain.llms import OpenAI  
2 from langchain.chains import LLMChain  
3 from langchain.prompts import PromptTemplate  
4 import openai  
5  
6 # Define the prompt template  
7 prompt_template = PromptTemplate.from_template("""  
8 Write a Python script that fetches a 2m temperature field from DWD open data and  
     plots it.
```

```
9 """")
10
11 # Initialize the LLM
12 llm = OpenAI(api_key=os.getenv("OPENAI_API_KEY"))
13 chain = LLMChain(llm=llm, prompt=prompt_template)
14
15 # Get generated code
16 code = chain.run("")
17
18 # Save and execute
19 with open("generated_weather_script.py", "w") as f:
20     f.write(code)
21 exec(open("generated_weather_script.py").read())
```

11.4 Example 2: Using Auto-GPT to Automate Tasks

Auto-GPT is an advanced framework for autonomous coding agents. We set it up and use it to generate and run Python scripts.

11.4.1 Installation

Installing Auto-GPT

```
1 !git clone https://github.com/Torantulino/Auto-GPT.git
2 !cd Auto-GPT && pip install -r requirements.txt
```

11.4.2 Using Auto-GPT to Generate and Execute Code

Auto-GPT Code Execution

```
1 from autogpt.agent import AutoGPT
2
3 auto_gpt = AutoGPT(api_key=os.getenv("OPENAI_API_KEY"))
4
5 response = auto_gpt.run_task("Fetch a 2m temperature field from DWD open data and
       display it with Matplotlib and Cartopy.")
6
7 print("Generated Code:")
8 print(response)
```

11.5 Generated Code: Fetching and Plotting a 2m Temperature Field

Once the agent generates the code, we execute it to visualize the data.

```
Fetching and Plotting 2m Temperature from DWD

1 import eccodes
2 import numpy as np
3 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
4 import cartopy.crs as ccrs
5 import requests
6 import os
7
8 # Download GRIB file
9 url = "https://opendata.dwd.de/weather/nwp/icon-eu/grib/00/t_2m.grib2"
10 response = requests.get(url)
11 with open("temperature.grib2", "wb") as f:
12     f.write(response.content)
13
14 # Read GRIB data
15 with open("temperature.grib2", "rb") as f:
16     gid = eccodes.codes_grib_new_from_file(f)
17     values = eccodes.codes_get_values(gid)
18     latitudes = eccodes.codes_get_array(gid, "latitudes")
19     longitudes = eccodes.codes_get_array(gid, "longitudes")
20     eccodes.codes_release(gid)
21
22 # Reshape data
23 grid_shape = (int(np.sqrt(len(values))), int(np.sqrt(len(values))))
24 values = values.reshape(grid_shape)
25 latitudes = latitudes.reshape(grid_shape)
26 longitudes = longitudes.reshape(grid_shape)
27
28 # Plot temperature field
29 plt.figure(figsize=(10, 6))
30 ax = plt.axes(projection=ccrs.PlateCarree())
31 plt.contourf(longitudes, latitudes, values, cmap="coolwarm")
32 plt.colorbar(label="2m Temperature (degreeC)")
33 ax.coastlines()
34 plt.title("2m Temperature from DWD Open Data")
35 plt.show()
```

This section demonstrates how to use LLMs and agent frameworks to generate, execute, and visualize weather data from DWD OpenData.

11.6 Building a Vector Database as Package

We'll structure your package as follows:

```
faiss_query_tool/
|-- faiss_query_tool/          # Main package folder
|   |-- code-ch01-sec02-code-ch01-sec02-__init__.py
|   |-- code-ch14-sec01-code-ch14-sec01-loader.py      # Handles document loading
|   |-- code-ch14-sec01-code-ch14-sec01-embeddings.py    # Handles embedding model
|   |-- code-ch14-sec01-code-ch14-sec01-faiss_index.py   # Handles FAISS index
|   |-- code-ch14-sec01-code-ch14-sec01-query.py        # Querying functionality
|   |-- code-ch14-sec01-code-ch14-sec01-openai_chat.py   # OpenAI integration
|-- tests/                      # Test scripts
|-- code-ch01-sec02-code-ch01-sec02-setup.py           # Package metadata and installation
|-- README.md                    # Documentation
|-- requirements.txt              # Required dependencies
```

11.6.1 Load files into Vector Database

We first build a loader

11.6.2 Installation of your package

In the root directory of your package, run

Installation

```
1 pip install .
```

Chapter 12

LLMs for Geosciences, Weather, and Climate

12.1 The LLM AI Interface and Framework DAWID

We show the design and setup of the LLM AI interface and framework DAWID, integrating AI/ML based services, specific knowledge, functions and data with an LLM based chatbot interface.

12.2 AI-Assisted Feature Detection in Weather and Climate Data

LLMs, combined with vision models, can detect and classify meteorological structures such as cyclones, atmospheric rivers, and thunderstorms from satellite and radar imagery. These models can help automate severe weather monitoring and early warning systems.

12.3 Automated Weather Report Generation and Interpretation

By fine-tuning LLMs on numerical weather model outputs and past forecasts, AI can generate structured weather reports, translate forecast uncertainties into human-readable summaries, and assist in rapid decision-making for operational meteorologists.

12.4 Communicating Weather and Climate Information with LLMs

LLMs can enhance communication by translating complex meteorological data into accessible narratives for different audiences, from scientific experts to the general public, ensuring clarity and preventing misinterpretations.

12.5 Impact-Based Decision Support Tools for Weather and Climate

Integrating LLMs with impact-based forecasting systems allows users to assess how weather and climate events will affect specific sectors (e.g., transportation, agriculture, energy). AI-driven tools can provide tailored recommendations and risk assessments.

Chapter 13

MLFlow - Managing and Monitoring Training

13.1 Setting up MLFlow

13.2 Monitoring Training

13.3 Comparing Experiments

13.4 Managing Parameters

Chapter 14

MLOps - Operations

14.1 Introduction to MLOps: Principles and Workflow

This section provides an overview of MLOps, outlining its core principles, the lifecycle of machine learning models in production, and how it bridges the gap between data science and operations.

14.2 Model Deployment and Monitoring

We explore different deployment strategies (batch, real-time, edge AI) and discuss monitoring techniques, including drift detection, model performance tracking, and automated retraining pipelines.

14.3 CI/CD for Machine Learning: Automation and Reproducibility

This section covers how continuous integration and deployment (CI/CD) practices are adapted for ML workflows, ensuring automated testing, versioning, and reproducibility.

14.4 Scalability and Infrastructure: Kubernetes, Cloud, and On-Premise Solutions

We examine infrastructure choices for MLOps, comparing cloud-based solutions, Kubernetes orchestration, and on-premise setups, emphasizing cost-efficiency and scalability.

Chapter 15

Fine-Tuning LLMs

15.1 Introduction to Finetuning Large Language Models

Finetuning allows pretrained LLMs to adapt to specific tasks, domains, or datasets, improving their performance without training from scratch.

15.2 Dataset Preparation and Preprocessing

Successful finetuning starts with well-curated datasets, requiring careful selection, cleaning, tokenization, and formatting to ensure high-quality inputs.

15.3 Techniques and Strategies for Finetuning

Various approaches, including full-model finetuning, parameter-efficient tuning like LoRA, and reinforcement learning, enable different levels of adaptation and efficiency.

15.4 Evaluation and Deployment of Finetuned Models

After finetuning, models must be rigorously evaluated using appropriate metrics, monitored for bias, and optimized for scalable deployment.

Chapter 16

Anemol – AI-Based Weather Modeling

16.1 Introduction to Anemol

Anemol is an AI-driven weather modeling system designed to enhance numerical weather prediction (NWP) through deep learning techniques. This section provides an overview of its role, capabilities, and applications in meteorology.

16.2 Core Architecture and AI Components

Anemol leverages a combination of neural networks and physics-informed machine learning to model atmospheric processes. The system integrates with conventional forecasting models to improve accuracy and computational efficiency.

16.3 Training Anemol with Historical Weather Data

To develop robust AI models, Anemol is trained on large-scale reanalysis datasets, satellite observations, and in-situ measurements. This section outlines the preprocessing, feature selection, and data augmentation techniques used for training.

Chapter 17

Model Emulation and AICON

17.1 The AICON Training Dataset

The AICON framework relies on a curated dataset derived from high-resolution NWP simulations, observational data, and reanalysis products. The dataset is processed to ensure consistency, quality control, and suitability for deep learning applications.

17.2 The AICON Setup, Grid and Graph Network

AICON is built on a structured computational grid that aligns with existing numerical models. The AI network architecture includes convolutional layers, recurrent structures, and transformer-based models for capturing spatiotemporal dependencies.

17.3 How AICON Hierarchical Training works

AICON employs a hierarchical training strategy, where models are initially trained on coarse-resolution data and progressively refined with finer-scale features. This approach enhances generalization while maintaining computational efficiency.

17.4 AICON Runs Verification

Operational AICON runs involve inference on real-time meteorological data. This section describes the execution pipeline, computational requirements, and evaluation metrics used to validate model performance.

Chapter 18

AI Data Assimilation

18.1 Introduction to AI-VAR

AI-augmented variational data assimilation (AI-VAR) integrates machine learning techniques with classical variational methods to improve initial conditions for numerical weather prediction (NWP). This section introduces the concept and its potential advantages over traditional methods.

18.2 Observation Processing

High-quality observational data is critical for accurate AI-driven assimilation. This section discusses AI techniques for quality control, bias correction, missing data imputation, and feature extraction from remote sensing and in-situ measurements.

18.3 Training and Applications

Training AI models for data assimilation requires specialized datasets, including reanalysis products, observational archives, and simulation-generated synthetic data. This section outlines training methodologies, real-world applications, and operational use cases for AI-enhanced assimilation.

Chapter 19

History of Large Language Models

19.1 The History of Large Language Models

19.1.1 The Beginnings: From Vision to the First Machine Translation

The idea of machines that can understand and use language dates back a long way. As early as the 1950s, Alan Turing laid the groundwork for computational linguistics with his vision of “thinking machines”. He developed the famous Turing Test to determine whether a machine could communicate so convincingly that it was indistinguishable from a human. This concept inspired many early chatbot systems.

A practical example of machine language processing was the Georgetown-IBM experiment in 1954, which could automatically translate simple sentences. It soon became clear that language is not just words and grammar, but also context, meaning, and nuance—a major challenge for machines.

19.1.2 The 1970s and 1980s: Rule-Based Systems and Symbolic AI

In the following decades, researchers relied on rule-based systems that analyzed language using fixed patterns. ELIZA (1966) was one of the most well-known early programs of this type. It simulated therapeutic conversations by recognizing keywords and returning pre-defined responses—without any real language understanding.

Another milestone was SHRDLU (1970), a system that interpreted simple verbal commands in a simulated block world. These early efforts showed that while AI could process language, it was still heavily dependent on manually crafted rules and responses.

19.1.3 The 1990s: Statistics Over Rules — The Rise of Probabilistic Models

With the increasing availability of large text corpora, researchers began to use statistical methods instead of fixed rules. N-gram models analyzed word sequence probabilities, producing text that appeared more natural.

IBM's work in statistical machine translation was especially groundbreaking. These systems

performed much better than earlier rule-based approaches and laid the foundation for modern translation technologies. However, they computed only probabilities, without a deeper understanding of language.

19.1.4 The 2000s: The Rise of Neural Networks and Deep Learning

Advances in artificial neural networks marked a major breakthrough in the 2000s. Recurrent Neural Networks (RNNs) and especially Long Short-Term Memory (LSTM) networks greatly improved the processing of language sequences.

A revolutionary step was the introduction of word embeddings. While older systems treated language as a mere sequence of words, models like word2vec (2013) mapped words into a multidimensional space, making it possible to compute semantic similarities (e.g., “king” and “queen” are related, or “Paris” belongs to “France”).

19.1.5 The 2010s: Transformers — The Revolution in Language Processing

In 2017 the breakthrough came with the Transformer architecture by Vaswani et al. This model employed self-attention to analyze a word’s context across the entire sentence rather than only its neighbors. This approach quickly became the standard for nearly all modern language models.

In 2018, Google introduced BERT, a model that processed text bidirectionally. BERT revolutionized many NLP tasks by understanding words in the context of their surroundings.

19.1.6 The 2020s: Generative AI and the Breakthrough of Large Language Models

In 2020, OpenAI’s GPT-3 made headlines. With 175 billion parameters, it was the most powerful language model of its time, capable of generating fluent text, writing code, and answering questions impressively.

Then, with ChatGPT (2022), AI became truly accessible. Suddenly, anyone could chat with an AI that responded in natural language, explained complex topics, and even wrote creative texts. The introduction of GPT-4 (2023) and other multimodal models, which can process text alongside images and other data, expanded AI’s versatility.

19.1.7 Current Trends: The Future of Language AI

Today, in 2025, AI is evolving rapidly:

- Multimodal models can analyze not only text but also images, videos, and audio.
- AI agents are taking on complex tasks autonomously and interacting with other systems.
- Ethical challenges are coming into focus to prevent misuse, biases, and misinformation.

Key Factors Driving Progress

Two essential factors have made the development of language models possible:

1. **Large Data Sets:** AI models require enormous text corpora to learn language effectively.
2. **Computing Power:** Advances in hardware, especially high-performance GPUs and TPUs, have enabled the training of ever larger models.

Ethical and Societal Considerations

As AI grows more powerful, new challenges arise:

- **Risks:** The spread of misinformation, biases in models, and potential misuse by fraudsters or manipulators.
- **Opportunities:** Enhanced communication, task automation, and entirely new possibilities for research, education, and creativity.

The impact of these developments on our worldview and understanding of humanity will be explored further in this book.

19.2 The Georgetown-IBM Experiment of 1954

The Georgetown-IBM Experiment of 1954 marked a significant milestone in the history of machine translation. On January 7, 1954, scientists from Georgetown University in collaboration with IBM demonstrated a system that could automatically translate Russian sentences into English.

19.2.1 Background and Objectives

The main goal of the experiment was to showcase the potential of machine translation and to attract public and governmental support for further research. Although the system was limited in scope, it impressively demonstrated the capabilities of computer technology in language processing.

19.2.2 Technical Details

The translation system was based on the IBM 701, one of IBM's first commercial scientific computers. It had a vocabulary of about 250 words and six grammar rules. The vocabulary covered fields such as politics, law, mathematics, chemistry, metallurgy, communications, and military affairs. Words were stored on punch cards and processed by the computer. The translation was fully automatic, with no human intervention during the process.

19.2.3 Experiment Process

During the demonstration, more than 60 Russian sentences (transliterated into Latin) were entered into the computer by an operator who did not understand Russian. The IBM 701 produced the corresponding English translations within seconds. The selected sentences covered topics from politics and law to mathematics and natural sciences.

19.2.4 Examples of Translated Sentences

Some examples of the translated sentences are:

- **Russian (transliterated):** Mi pyeryedayem mislyi posryedstvom ryechyi.
English: We transmit thoughts by means of speech.
- **Russian (transliterated):** Vyelyichyina ugla opryedyelyayetsya otnoshenyiyem dlyini dugi k radyusu.
English: The magnitude of an angle is determined by the ratio of the arc length to the radius.
- **Russian (transliterated):** Myezhdunarodnoye ponyimaniye yavlyayetsya vazhnim faktorom v ryeshenyi polyticheskix voprosov.
English: International understanding is an important factor in resolving political issues.

19.2.5 Reception and Impact

The demonstration received widespread media attention and was hailed as a great success. It raised high expectations for automatic translation systems and led to increased investments in research. Although the developers were optimistic that machine translation could be solved within three to five years, the actual progress turned out to be far more complex and time-consuming.

Overall, the Georgetown-IBM Experiment laid the groundwork for future research and development in machine translation and greatly influenced the field of computational linguistics.

19.3 ELIZA — The First Chatbot in History

ELIZA is one of the most well-known early programs for natural language processing and is often regarded as the first chatbot in history. Developed between 1964 and 1966 by Joseph Weizenbaum at MIT, ELIZA was designed to show that machines could simulate human-like interactions using simple linguistic tricks.

19.3.1 How ELIZA Worked

ELIZA used a pattern-based approach, recognizing keywords in user inputs and returning pre-formulated responses by repeating or rephrasing parts of the input. It did not possess true language understanding but operated using simple rules and scripted patterns.

Its best-known script, the “DOCTOR” script, simulated a psychotherapist using a Rogerian approach, for example:

- **User:** I have problems with my mother.
- ELIZA:** Tell me more about your mother.

This led many users to believe that ELIZA truly “understood” them, even though it was simply performing rule-based text transformations.

19.3.2 The Significance of ELIZA

Although technically simple, ELIZA was the first program to show that people tend to attribute human characteristics to machine interactions—a tendency Weizenbaum warned against. He argued that humans should not overly personalize machines since they lack true understanding.

ELIZA had a lasting impact on the development of artificial intelligence and language processing, inspiring later chatbots such as PARRY (1972), ALICE (1995), and ultimately modern systems like ChatGPT.

19.3.3 Limitations and Constraints

ELIZA had several limitations:

- It could only manage very limited conversations.
- It did not understand context or meaning.
- Its responses were generated solely through simple text patterns without any actual analysis.

19.3.4 Publicly Available Literature on ELIZA

For further information on ELIZA, see:

1. The Wikipedia article on ELIZA for an overview of its history, functionality, and significance.
2. Joseph Weizenbaum’s original 1966 paper on ELIZA for a detailed technical description.
3. The original publication “ELIZA — A Computer Program for the Study of Natural Language Communication between Man and Machine” (1966).
4. Articles and historical overviews on the evolution from ELIZA to modern chatbots.
5. Additional background available on MIT’s website regarding early AI research.

19.4 Probabilistic Models in Language Processing in the 1990s

19.4.1 The Paradigm Shift: From Rules to Probabilities

Until the 1980s, rule-based methods dominated machine language processing. Systems like ELIZA (1966) and SHRDLU (1970) used pre-defined rules and patterns, making them inflexible to new expressions and requiring extensive manual adjustments.

In the 1990s, a fundamental shift occurred: statistical probabilistic models were seen as a more powerful alternative. Instead of manually specifying rules, these models analyzed large text datasets to identify word and sentence patterns based on probabilities.

19.4.2 N-Gram Models: The Foundation of Modern Language Processing

One of the key developments of this era was the introduction of N-gram models. An N-gram is a sequence of N consecutive words:

- A unigram considers a single word.
- A bigram analyzes word pairs (e.g., “good morning”).
- A trigram considers three consecutive words (e.g., “I am going today”).

These models estimated the probability of a word based on the preceding words. For example, a bigram model might calculate that “morning” is highly likely to follow “good.”

19.4.3 The N-Gram Formula

In a bigram model, the probability of a sentence is given by:

$$P(W_1, W_2, \dots, W_n) = P(W_1) P(W_2 | W_1) P(W_3 | W_2) \dots P(W_n | W_{n-1})$$

Here, $P(W_n | W_{n-1})$ is the probability of a word given the previous word.

This simple method allowed for the calculation of sentence probabilities and significantly improved machine translation, speech recognition, and autocomplete features.

19.4.4 Statistical Machine Translation (IBM Models)

IBM developed a series of models in the 1990s that used statistical methods for translating texts:

- Parallel texts (e.g., English-French) were analyzed.
- Probabilities were computed to determine which word in one language corresponds to a specific word in another.
- The more frequently a word pair occurred in the training data, the more likely it was to be used in future translations.

IBM Models 1–5 (1990–1993) introduced alignment methods to calculate word-to-word correspondences. Models 4 and 5 further improved these ideas by considering word order.

19.4.5 Hidden Markov Models (HMMs) for Speech Recognition

While N-gram models were used for text, automatic speech recognition systems increasingly relied on Hidden Markov Models (HMMs):

- HMMs are probabilistic models that represent a sequence of states (e.g., spoken sounds).
- They were employed in systems such as Dragon Dictate and early versions of Google Voice.
- HMMs improved speech recognition by considering both the probability of individual words and their phonetic variations.

19.4.6 Influence and Limitations

Advantages:

- Automated learning from large datasets without explicit rules.
- High scalability and flexibility across various languages.
- Applications in machine translation, speech recognition, and spell checking.

Disadvantages:

- Limited context: N-gram models consider only a fixed number of words.
- High data requirements: Large text corpora are needed.
- Lack of semantic understanding: These models compute probabilities without capturing meaning.

Despite these drawbacks, probabilistic models were a crucial step towards modern language AI, paving the way for neural networks and deep learning.

19.5 The Rise of Neural Networks from 2000

19.5.1 From Statistics to Deep Learning: A Turning Point in AI

Up to the 1990s, statistical models dominated language processing. By the 2000s, it became clear that these methods were limited—they struggled with complex semantics and required massive datasets.

During this period, neural networks experienced a resurgence. Although the concept of artificial neurons dates back to the 1950s, technological advances in the 2000s made large-scale neural networks practical.

19.5.2 The Renaissance of Neural Networks

1. **Hardware Advances:** Powerful GPUs made training large networks feasible.
2. **Robust Architectures:**
 - Multi-Layer Perceptrons (MLPs) were initially too shallow to capture deep patterns.
 - Recurrent Neural Networks (RNNs), especially LSTMs (introduced in 1997), improved sequence learning for language.
3. **New Training Methods:**
 - Backpropagation with improved optimization algorithms (e.g., Adam from 2014) enabled faster, more stable learning.
 - Dropout techniques (introduced in 2012) helped reduce overfitting.

19.5.3 Deep Learning Takes Over

- **2006:** Geoffrey Hinton and colleagues introduced Deep Belief Networks, showing that deep architectures could outperform traditional methods.
- **2010s:** Deep learning surpassed classical statistical models in almost every AI domain, from image recognition to language processing.

19.5.4 Breakthroughs in Speech Recognition and Machine Translation

- **2011:** Apple introduced Siri, one of the first voice assistants using neural network recognition.
- **2012:** Google Voice began using neural networks, achieving drastic improvements in speech recognition.
- **2016:** AlphaGo defeated the world champion in Go, a major milestone based on deep neural networks.
- **2016:** Google Translate shifted from statistical to neural machine translation, dramatically improving translation quality.

19.5.5 Challenges and Limitations

Neural networks also faced significant challenges:

- High computational costs for training large models.
- Dependence on vast amounts of training data.
- Limited interpretability: Neural networks often act as “black boxes” with unclear decision processes.

These challenges spurred the development of new models, such as Transformers, which set a new standard for language AI from 2017 onward.

19.6 The Vector Representation of Language and Its Significance

19.6.1 From Text to Vectors: A Revolution in Language Processing

Traditionally, language in AI systems was treated as a mere sequence of characters or words. Simple statistical models and early neural networks could not capture complex semantic relationships.

The breakthrough came with the vector representation of language. Words, sentences, or even entire documents are now represented as mathematical vectors in a multidimensional space, fundamentally changing how machines understand and store language.

19.6.2 Word Embeddings: The Foundation

The first major progress in vector representation came with word embeddings:

- **Word2Vec (2013, Google):** The first widely used model to convert words into dense vectors, enabling calculations such as:
$$\text{"king"} - \text{"man"} + \text{"woman"} \approx \text{"queen"}$$
- **GloVe (2014, Stanford):** An alternative based on word co-occurrence statistics, yielding accurate vector representations for semantic similarity.

19.6.3 Representing Sentences and Documents

While word embeddings capture individual words, later models represented whole sentences or paragraphs as vectors. Models such as BERT (2018) or Sentence Transformers emerged:

- **BERT & Transformers:** Provide contextual word vectors that account for a word's meaning within a sentence.
- **Sentence-BERT (SBERT, 2019):** Converts entire sentences into vectors for faster, more accurate semantic search.

19.6.4 Vector Databases: A New Infrastructure

The advent of word and sentence embeddings created the need for efficient databases to store and search high-dimensional vectors:

- **Definition:** Vector databases store data in specialized index structures rather than traditional tables.
- **Notable Examples:**
 - FAISS (Facebook AI Similarity Search)
 - Pinecone
 - Weaviate
 - Milvus

19.6.5 Applications and Importance

Vector representations enable:

- **Semantic Search:** Comparing meanings instead of exact keywords.
- **Recommendation Systems:** Used by platforms like Netflix and Spotify.
- **Chatbots and AI Assistants:** Faster retrieval of responses, as seen in ChatGPT.
- **Plagiarism Detection:** Automated text comparison in academia and publishing.

The combination of neural networks and vector databases now forms the backbone of modern AI language processing.

19.7 The Transformer Revolution (2010–2020): The Rise of Modern Language Models

19.7.1 A Decade of Transformation

Between 2010 and 2020, AI-driven language processing underwent a radical transformation. Early models such as RNNs and LSTMs had their limitations, and the breakthrough came in 2017 with the Transformer architecture, which laid the foundation for modern large language models.

19.7.2 Challenges Before Transformers

- RNNs processed sequences but suffered from vanishing gradients.
- LSTMs, with gating mechanisms, improved on RNNs but still struggled with long-range dependencies.
- Both required sequential processing, which slowed down training.

Researchers needed a solution that preserved long context and allowed for efficient training.

19.7.3 2017: “Attention Is All You Need” — The Birth of the Transformer

In 2017, a Google research team published the groundbreaking paper “Attention Is All You Need”. The Transformer introduced:

- **Self-Attention:** Every word in a sentence relates directly to every other word.
- **Parallel Processing:** Eliminating the need for sequential steps.
- **Scalability:** Efficient training on GPUs allowed for much larger models.

Self-Attention

Instead of looking only at the few preceding words, a Transformer considers all words at once, determining the relevance between each pair via:

$$\text{Attention}(Q, K, V) = \text{softmax}\left(\frac{QK^T}{\sqrt{d_k}}\right)V$$

where Q (Query), K (Key), and V (Value) encode word relationships.

19.7.4 Transformers in NLP (2018–2020)

Following the Transformer paper, the architecture was quickly adopted:

- **BERT (2018, Google)**: Used Transformers for bidirectional contextual language understanding.
- **XLNet (2019, Google/CMU)**: Enhanced BERT with permutation-based training.
- **T5 (2019, Google)**: Treated all NLP tasks as text-to-text transformations.
- **RoBERTa (2019, Facebook AI)**: An optimized BERT variant with improved pretraining.

19.7.5 Bridging to GPT

While models like BERT were designed as encoders for understanding, OpenAI took a different path:

- **2018**: GPT-1 — The first generative Transformer model.
- **2019**: GPT-2 — Improved autoregressive text generation.
- **2020**: GPT-3 — Revolutionized generative AI with human-like text output.

19.8 The GPT Revolution from 2020: Artificial Intelligence at the Next Level

19.8.1 A Paradigm Shift

From 2020 onward, large generative language models based on Transformers triggered an AI revolution. While the 2010s saw improved language understanding via models like BERT, OpenAI's GPT-3 (2020) introduced a new quality in text generation.

Key differences include:

- GPT models are autoregressive, meaning they generate text as well as understand it.
- They are based on the decoder part of the Transformer, unlike encoder-based models.

This breakthrough spurred new applications in chatbots, automated content creation, AI-assisted programming, and more.

19.8.2 GPT-3: The Breakthrough in Generative AI (2020)

Released in June 2020, GPT-3:

- Boasted 175 billion parameters, an unprecedented scale.
- Performed a wide variety of tasks from translation to code generation.
- Produced text so human-like that it was often indistinguishable from human writing.

Its success was driven by “few-shot learning,” where the model needed only a few examples to perform a task.

19.8.3 ChatGPT: Making AI Interactive (2022)

In December 2022, OpenAI launched ChatGPT, enabling dialogue with large language models. Key features included:

- Reinforcement Learning from Human Feedback (RLHF) to improve safety and utility.
- The ability to remember conversational context.
- Wide accessibility to the public.

Within five days, ChatGPT reached one million users and sparked debates on automation, ethics, and job displacement.

19.8.4 GPT-4: Multimodality and Enhanced Intelligence (2023)

In March 2023, GPT-4 was released with significant improvements:

- **Multimodality:** The ability to understand and describe images.
- **Larger Context Windows:** Enhanced capacity to analyze longer texts.
- **Improved Accuracy:** Fewer factual errors through refined tuning.

Its applications range from coding and medical research to educational tools.

19.8.5 Open-Source and New Competitors (2023–2024)

Alongside proprietary models, the open-source AI community grew:

- **Meta’s LLaMA (2023):** A powerful model accessible for research.

- **Mistral AI (2023):** Smaller but highly efficient models.
- **DeepSeek AI (2024):** New competitors from China offering alternative systems.

Companies such as Google (Gemini), Microsoft (Copilot), and Anthropic (Claude) also expanded their generative AI offerings.

19.8.6 The Next Step: Agents and Multimodal AI (2025)

Development is accelerating:

- **Autonomous AI Agents:** Systems that plan and execute complex tasks independently.
- **Enhanced Multimodality:** Integration of text, images, video, and audio in real time.
- **Personal AI Assistants:** Digital assistants capable of long-term, interactive engagement.

The GPT revolution has transformed our world, and the coming decade promises even greater advancements.

19.9 AI Agents: Autonomous Systems of the Future

19.9.1 From Language Models to Autonomous Agents

While large language models like GPT-3 and GPT-4 generate impressive text, the next step is to develop autonomous AI agents. These agents go beyond simple Q&A systems and can plan, execute, and optimize complex tasks independently.

19.9.2 What is an AI Agent?

An AI agent is a system that:

- Pursues specific goals (e.g., research, coding, process optimization).
- Makes independent decisions based on available information.
- Interacts with external systems via tools and APIs.

They typically include:

- A large language model as the “brain” for processing and decision-making.
- Tools and APIs to access external systems.
- Long-term memory for recalling past tasks or user preferences.
- Planning mechanisms to think several steps ahead.

19.9.3 Existing AI Agents Today

Examples include:

- **Autonomous Research and Writing Agents:**
 - **Auto-GPT (2023)**: The first agent capable of setting its own goals and working autonomously.
 - **BabyAGI (2023)**: An agent that creates and refines long-term plans.
 - **AgentGPT (2023)**: A web-based agent that can independently undertake tasks.
- **AI Agents for Software Development:**
 - **GitHub Copilot X (2023–2024)**: An agent integrated into IDEs for code generation.
 - **Devin (2024, Cognition AI)**: An agent that autonomously programs and debugs.
- **Agents for Research and Science:**
 - **Google DeepMind AlphaFold (2021–2023)**: An agent that predicts protein structures and advances biological research.
 - **Elicit AI (2023)**: An agent that analyzes and summarizes scientific literature.
- **Autonomous Business and Automation Agents:**
 - **Microsoft Copilot for Office (2023–2024)**: AI-powered automation for business processes.
 - **Adept ACT-1 (2023–2024)**: A multimodal agent that interacts with user interfaces.

19.9.4 The Future of AI Agents

Looking ahead, we can expect:

- **Multimodal AI Agents**: Systems processing text, images, audio, and video simultaneously.
- **Agents with True Long-Term Memory**: Models that remember contexts and previous interactions over long periods.
- **Physical AI Agents**: Integration of language models with robotics to perform complex, real-world tasks.
- **Autonomous Economic Systems**: AI agents managing supply chains, marketing strategies, or trading.
- **Fully AI-Driven Developer Teams**: Software agents handling complete projects from planning to implementation.

The coming years will reveal how much autonomy AI agents can truly assume.

19.9.5 Publicly Available Literature on AI Agents

For more on AI agents, consider these resources:

1. Auto-GPT: An introduction to autonomous AI agents (<https://github.com/Torantulino/Auto-GPT>).
2. BabyAGI: A simple implementation of an AI agent with long-term planning (<https://github.com/yoheinakajima/babyagi>).
3. Devin: The first AI agent for software development (<https://www.cognition-labs.com/devin>).
4. AlphaFold: Google's AI agent for protein research (<https://www.nature.com/articles/s41586-021-03819-2>).
5. Elicit AI: Autonomous agents for scientific research (<https://elicit.org/>).
6. Adept ACT-1: Multimodal interaction agents (<https://www.adept.ai/blog/act-1>).
7. GitHub Copilot X: The future of AI-assisted software development (<https://github.com/features/copilot-x>).

Appendix

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo. Cras viverra metus rhoncus sem. Nulla et lectus vestibulum urna fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est, iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum. Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.